



# **2019 MY OBD System Operation**

# **Summary for Plug In and Hybrid Electric Vehicles**

# **Table of Contents**

Intro	oduction Hybrid Electric Vehicles		4
	HEV Powertrain Description		4
	Benefits of Hybrid Electric Vehicles		5
	Key Powertrain Components		5
	Engine		5 6
	Propulsion Modes		7
	Series Mode Positive Split Mode Negative Split Mode Electric Mode		7 7
	City & Highway Traffic Scenarios		
	PHEV On Board Charger		9
Cata	rid Electric Vehicle Control System alyst Efficiency Monitor ire Monitor		14
	Low Data Rate System		. 21
	General Misfire Algorithm Processing		. 21
	Profile Correction		. 22
EVA	AP System Monitor - Overview		26
	Evap Monitor Overview		. 26
	Fuel Systems Hardware – Sealed (PHE	EV and HEV)	. 29
EVA	AP System Monitor – Engine Running Diag AP System Monitor – Engine Off Diagnostic	nosticss	30
	ELCM Leak Detection 0.020" Monitor E	ntry Conditions	. 39
	FORD MOTOR COMPANY	REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017	

EVAP System Monitor Engine Off Component Checks	.45
PHEV Re-Fueling System	53
Fuel System Monitor	.58
FAOSC (Rear Fuel Trim) Monitor	64
Air Fuel Ratio Imbalance Monitor – O2 Sensor Monitor	66
Front UEGO Monitor	.69
Front UEGO Signal	69
Front UEGO Slow/Delayed Response Monitor (2010 MY and beyond)	77
UEGO Heaters	80
Rear HO2S Monitor	.83
Rear HO2S Signal	83
Rear HO2S Decel Fuel Shut Off Response Test	86
EWMA Fault Filtering	89
Rear HO2S Heaters,	92
Stepper Motor EGR System Monitor	
PCV System Monitor – Naturally Aspirated Engine with MAF Sensor Thermostat Monitor1	
Time To Closed Loop Monitor	
HEV/PHEV Cooling System Diagnostics	
Cold Start Emission Reduction Component Monitor	
Cold Start Emission Reduction System Monitor1  Variable Cam Timing System Monitor1	
Electronic Throttle Control	
Transmission Range Sensor Inputs1	23
Accelerator and Throttle Position Sensor Inputs1	24
Electronic Throttle Monitor1	26
Throttle Plate Position Controller (TPPC) Outputs	27
Comprehensive Component Monitor - Engine1	128
Engine Temperature Sensor Inputs1	28
IAT Rationality Test1	31
AAT Rationality Test1	33
Throttle Position Sensor1	35
Mass Air Flow Sensor1	35
MAF/TP Rationality Test1	36
Miscellaneous CPU Tests1	37
Ignition1	39
Engine Outputs1	42
Mechanical Returnless Fuel System (MRFS) — Dual Speed 1	43
Battery and Battery Charging Systems1	145
Low Voltage Battery Charging System - Overview1	45
High Voltage Battery Charging System - Overview1	46
High Voltage Battery - Overview1	52

	Battery Energy Control Module (BECM)	154
Pov	versplit Transaxle	.165
	Transmission Overview	165
	Transmission Control System Architecture	167
	Transmission Inputs	167
	HPCM Outputs	168
	Hybrid Powertrain Control Module (HPCM)	168
Hyb	orid Powertrain Control Module	.169
	Hybrid Powertrain Control Module (HPCM) External Inputs	169
	Transmission Range Sensor Inputs	183
	Transmission Auxiliary Oil Pump	184
ABS	S / Brake System	.191
	Brake System Overview	191
	Brake System Architecture	191
	Braking System External Inputs	194
	Brake System Control Module Outputs	200
	M On Board Diagnostic Executive	.207
	oonentially Weighted Moving Average Readiness Code	
	Jse Monitor Performance Ratio	
	alyst Temperature Model	
	ial Data Link MIL Illumination	
	culated Load Value	

# **Introduction Hybrid Electric Vehicles**

#### **HEV Powertrain Description**



A hybrid electric vehicle is powered by a conventional engine with an electric motor added for enhanced fuel economy and reduced emissions. The electric motor can also be used to boost power and enhance performance (like an extra "charge"). This type of vehicle is well suited for the environmentally aware driver who wants better fuel economy and fewer pollutants, but doesn't want the hassle of plug-ins.

A vehicle can be "more" of a hybrid than another. There are various levels of "hybridization," mild, full, and plug-in.

With all HEV variants, the engine turns off when it is not needed, reducing fuel waste, and instantly restarts when the need for power is detected. In addition, all hybrids provide electric assist, in that the combustion engine gets a boost of electric power from the battery pack. This provides additional acceleration performance when needed, without additional use of fuel. The main difference between the HEV variants is in the relative sizing of the electric powertrain to the combustion powertrain.

A mild hybrid has a relatively small electric motor to provide traction power and a small capacity battery. It is designed to provide a start-stop function along with a small amount of acceleration power (used to assist the combustion engine) and a small amount of regenerative braking (meaning vehicle energy that would otherwise would be wasted, is collected during braking to recharge the battery).

A full hybrid provides the same functions as a mild hybrid, but to a larger degree. Since it uses a larger electric motor and battery, it can provide greater amount of acceleration and regenerative braking power. In addition, a full hybrid provides an electric launch, whereby the electric motor can accelerate the vehicle without the combustion engine for small distances. The electric motor can be used to accelerate by itself (in pure electric mode) or in combination with the internal combustion engine (for greater power).

Plug-In hybrids have all of the functions and capabilities of a full hybrid, however, they use a larger battery which gives them greater electric-only driving range. In addition, plug-in hybrids have a charge port which can be used to charge the battery externally from electric mains to allow them to have full electric range without having to run the combustion engine.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 4 OF 207

### **Benefits of Hybrid Electric Vehicles**

- Reduces emissions by increasing average engine efficiency.
- Engine shuts down, when the vehicle is stopped.
- Electric motor boosts acceleration performance.
- Regenerative brakes recapture energy, to recharge the battery.
- Improved fuel economy stretches a tank of gas further, saves you money, and helps you conserve our limited petroleum resources.
- Driving performance is optimized because both the gas engine and electric motor are working for you.
- No battery plug-ins required for mild and full hybrids, and optional for plug-in hybrid.
- An HEV offers all the conveniences of conventional vehicles: spacious seating, storage room, creature comforts, and extended driving range.
- All Ford/Lincoln hybrids will be delivered, sold, and serviced at local Ford and Lincoln dealers.

# **Key Powertrain Components**

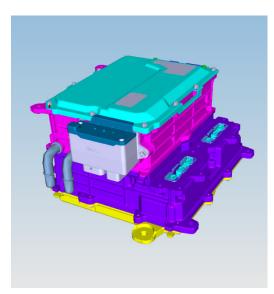
## **Engine**

- I-4 Gasoline Engine
- Electronic Throttle Control
- Atkinson Cycle to improve efficiency by reducing pumping losses
  - For Otto Cycle, expansion ratio equals compression ratio
  - Atkinson Cycle expansion ratio greater than compression ratio
- Leaves intake valve open longer during compression stroke pushing air back into intake manifold
- Operates with less vacuum and greater throttle opening to maintain air charge



#### **Inverter Control Module (ISC)**

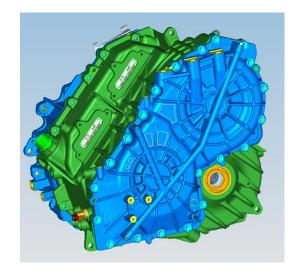
- Main hybrid control module
- Vehicle energy management functions
- Low level motor & gen control electronics and software
- Power electronics (motor and generator)
- Voltage boost converter
- Integrated heat exchanger
- Chassis mounted



FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 5 OF 207

#### **Transaxle**

- 64 kW Permanent Magnet AC Generator Motor
- 88 kW Permanent Magnet AC Traction Motor
- Connected to ISC by 3-phase cables for each motor
- Planetary gear set and final drive gears
- Connected to front 2-wheel or all-wheel driveline



# **Battery**

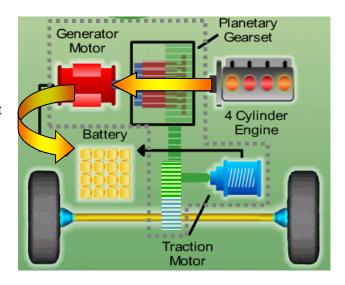
- Lithium-Ion battery chemistry
- Nearly twice the power density of previous model
- 35 kW power rating (new)



#### **Propulsion Modes**

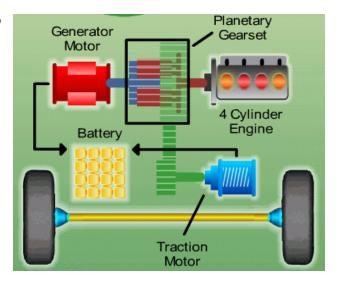
#### **Series Mode**

- Used only when vehicle is not moving and the engine is running
- Engine may be running for battery charging, cabin or battery temperature control, or catalyst warm-up.



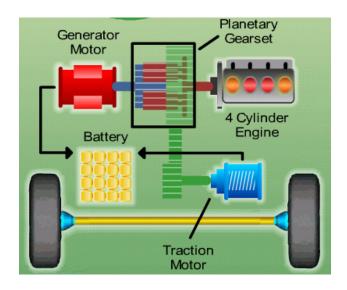
#### **Positive Split Mode**

- Engine is ON and driving the generator motor to produce electricity
- Power from the engine is split between the direct path to the road and the path through the generator motor
- Generator power can flow to the battery or to the traction motor
- The traction motor can operate as a motor or a generator to make up the difference between the engine power and the desired power
- This is the preferred mode whenever the battery needs to be charged or when at moderate loads and low vehicle speeds



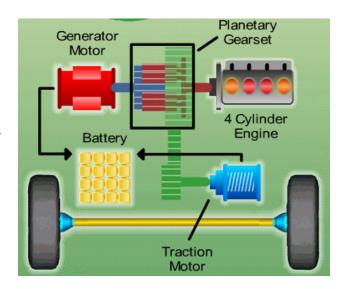
#### **Negative Split Mode**

- The engine is on and the generator motor consumes electrical energy to reduce engine speed
- The traction motor can operate as a motor or a generator to make up the difference between the engine power and the desired power
- Typical highway mode
- Occurs when the engine needs to be on, the system can not be operated in parallel mode and the battery is charged near its upper limit



#### **Electric Mode**

- The vehicle is propelled by stored electrical energy only
- The engine is turned off
- The tractive torque supplied from the traction motor
- Preferred mode whenever the desired power is low enough such that it can be produced more efficiently by electrical system than engine
- Preferred mode in reverse because the engine can not deliver reverse torque
- Separate electric pump maintains power assisted steering



#### **City & Highway Traffic Scenarios**

# **Stopped**

 The engine will be off unless it needs to be on for reasons other than tractive power (Max A/C, vacuum, catalyst temp, heat, purge, low SOC)

### Launching

- At low speed or low power demand, the launch mode will be electric, unless the engine needs to be on for other reasons.
- At moderate speed or high desired power, the engine will come on.

#### **Entering highway or Passing**

 At high acceleration demand, the engine power will be boosted with battery power through the traction motor to provide quick V-6 like response.

#### Cruisina

- At light load, the system may operate in parallel, positive split or negative split mode depending on the battery charge.
- At heavy load (due to high speeds, weight, towing or grade), the system will be limited to engine only performance (no battery support).
- Limited regenerative braking will be used.

#### **Exiting highway**

Provides an opportunity for regenerative braking.

#### Braking

- At high speed, the engine torque is ramped down, the traction motor regenerates to a limit and the foundation brakes are applied as necessary (at the traction motor or battery regen limits).
- At moderate and low speed, the engine will be turned off.

### **PHEV On Board Charger**

## Charge Fault HMI (Human Machine Interface) On the Vehicle

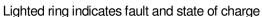
### **Vehicle Interior**

- Cluster Upon a charger fault, the BCCM and BECM can request the P/T malfunction indicator on the instrument cluster (amber wrench light). No specific message to point to the charge system which is similar to other onboard requests for this telltale.
- o 8" Centerstack Screen A charging fault message will be displayed in 8" centerstack.

#### **Vehicle Exterior**

The vehicle will have a light ring around the charge port located on the driver's fender. Upon a charge fault, all segments of the light ring will flash rapidly for 20-30 minutes.







Ring illuminates in 4 segments representing 25% increments of battery state of charge

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 9 OF 207

## **Charge Fault HMI Near the Vehicle**

#### 120V Convenience Cord

The convenience cord includes a CCID box with HMI display. A triangle with a (!) LED in the center indicates the following fault conditions:

- o CCID self test failure
- o CCID microprocessor failure
- o GFCI final fault
- Over current protection "final" fault



# 240V Wall Mount Charger

Red LED light illuminates indicating fault conditions. LED blinks unique codes depending on fault:

- Vehicle fault 1x / 2 sec
- Contactor fault 1x / 1 sec
- o CCID fault 2x / 1 sec
- o Ground missing 10x / 1 sec
- o Failed internal self test on steady





FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 10 OF 207

#### **Charge Fault HMI Remote from the Vehicle**

# **MyFord Mobile App**

Standard feature allowing cellular communication between vehicle and cell phone/computer New vehicle purchase includes pre-paid 5 year subscription (renewable)

Upon charge fault, automatic alerts will be sent to the owner's cell phone and/or computer via text/email message. The following reasons will trigger an alert:

- Charging Fault (during charging only)
- Scheduled Charge Not Occurring
- o Accidental Unplug if charger is unplugged and vehicle not driven within 15 minutes

Upon request by owner, MyFord Mobile App also sends vehicle reports containing other information that could point to a charging fault:

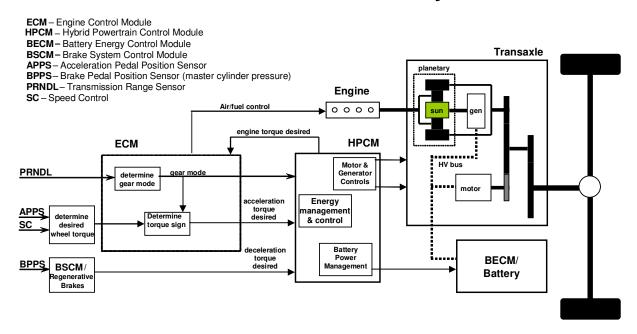
- Charge status, including: generic fault (not known if in the car or out of the car), fault inside car, fault outside car, charge in progress, charge scheduled, and charge complete
- Plug status
- Battery health if BECM not requesting telltale, health is ok



FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 11 OF 207

# **Hybrid Electric Vehicle Control System**

# Ford HEV Powertrain Control System



The Hybrid Electric Vehicle Control System uses four modules to control hybrid electric powertrain functions:

The Engine Control Module (ECM) monitors driver inputs and controls engine related functions.

The Hybrid Powertrain Control Module (HPCM) interprets driver inputs and controls energy management and generator and motor functions.

The Battery Energy Control Module (BECM) controls the high voltage battery pack.

The Brake System Control Module (BSCM) monitors driver braking requests and controls the braking functions.

All these modules use CAN communication for all diagnostic functions and normal-mode communications.

The ECM is a stand-alone OBD-II control module and meets all J1979 requirements. These include generic DIDs, freeze frame storage, pending and confirmed DTC retrieval and clearing, Mode 06 test data, Mode 08 evap system test, Mode 09 VIN, CALID and CVN, and Mode 0A Permanent DTCs. The OBD-II monitors for the engine are similar to the monitors used by a conventional gasoline vehicle. The basic difference between a conventional gasoline engine and the hybrid engine is that the engine often shuts down while in electric mode. This sometimes requires active intervention by the diagnostic executive to ensure that all OBD-II monitor can complete.

The HPCM is a stand-alone OBD-II control module and meets all J1979 requirements. These include generic DIDs, freeze frame storage, pending and confirmed DTC retrieval and clearing, and Mode 09 CALID and CVN, and Mode 0A Permanent DTCs. Some of the OBD-II monitors for hybrid system are similar to the monitors used by a conventional transmission; however, many of the monitors are unique to the hybrid generator and motor sensors and controls. The HPCM is housed within the Inverter Control System (ISC) models, and is not serviceable with the exception of reflashing memory.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 12 OF 207

The Battery Energy Control Module (BECM) is a stand-alone OBD-II control module and meets all J1979 requirements. These include generic PIDs, freeze frame storage, pending and confirmed DTC retrieval and clearing, and Mode 09 CALID and CVN. The BECM is housed within the battery pack and is not serviceable with the exception of reflashing memory. As a result, the BECM supports J1979 Mode 09 CALID and CVN.

The Brake System Control Module (BSCM) is not an OBD-II control module because there are no regenerative braking faults that affect emissions.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 13 OF 207

# **Catalyst Efficiency Monitor**

The Catalyst Efficiency Monitor uses an oxygen sensor after the catalyst to infer the hydrocarbon efficiency based on oxygen storage capacity of the ceria and precious metals in the washcoat. Under normal, closed-loop fuel conditions, high efficiency catalysts have significant oxygen storage. This makes the switching frequency of the rear HO2S very slow and reduces the amplitude. As catalyst efficiency deteriorates due to thermal and/or chemical deterioration, its ability to store oxygen declines and the post-catalyst HO2S signal begins to switch more rapidly with increasing amplitude. The predominant failure mode for high mileage catalysts is chemical deterioration (phosphorus deposition on the front brick of the catalyst), not thermal deterioration.

#### **Integrated Air/Fuel Method**

The Integrated Air/Fuel Catalyst Monitor assesses the oxygen storage capacity of a catalyst after a fuel cut event. The monitor integrates how much excess fuel is needed to drive the monitored catalyst to a rich condition starting from an oxygen-saturated, lean condition. Therefore, the monitor is a measure of how much fuel is required to force catalyst breakthrough from lean to rich. To accomplish this, the monitor runs during fuel reactivation following a Decel Fuel Shut Off (DFSO) event. The monitor completes after a calibrated number of DFSO monitoring events have occurred. The IAF catalyst monitor can be used with either a wide range O2 sensor (UEGO) or a conventional switching sensor (HEGO).

Functionally, the equation is:

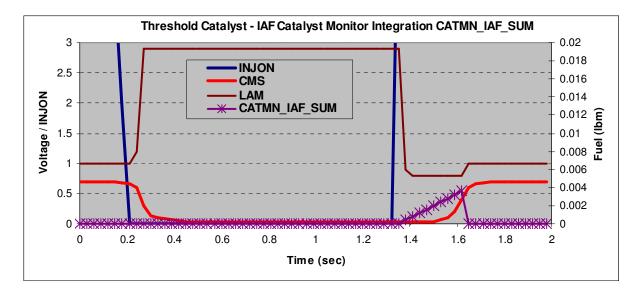
$$IAF = \int \left( \frac{Fuel\_needed\_for\_stoich}{Fuel\_Measured} - Fuel\_needed\_for\_stoich \right)$$

where the units are in pounds mass of fuel.

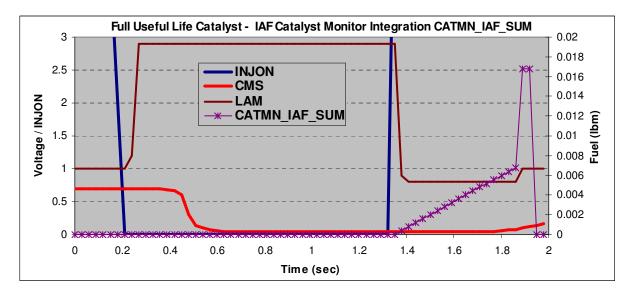
The monitor runs during reactivation fueling following an injector cut. The diagram below shows examples of one DFSO event with a threshold catalyst and with a Full Useful Life catalyst where:

- INJON = # of injectors on.
- CMS is the catalyst monitor sensor voltage. When the rear O2 sensor crosses 0.45 volts (i.e. rich) the monitor will complete for the given DFSO event.
- LAM (LAMBDA) is the front O2 sensor (UEGO) signal.
- CATMN IAF SUM is the integral from the equations above (Y axis on the right).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 14 OF 207



In this example, CATMN\_IAF\_SUM is small because it doesn't take much fuel to break though a low oxygen storage threshold catalyst.



In this example, CATMN\_IAF\_SUM is much larger because it takes a substantial amount of fuel to break through a high oxygen storage threshold catalyst.

Reactivation fuel is limited by the catalyst monitor to optimize fuel economy and minimize emissions. A "green" catalyst with a lot of oxygen storage capability would require a large amount of reactivation fuel to completely break through and get the rear O2 sensor to switch rich. Reactivation fuel is clipped to a maximum level so that normal closed loop fuel control can be resumed when a calibrated amount of reactivation fuel has been delivered.

There are two sets of entry conditions into the IAF catalyst monitor. The high level entry conditions determine that the monitor would like to run following the next injector fuel cut event. The lower level entry conditions determine that the fuel cut-off event was suitable for monitoring and the monitor will run as soon as the injectors come back on.

- 1. The high level entry conditions are met when:
  - There are no senor/hardware faults
  - The base monitor entry conditions have been met (ECT, IAT, cat temp, fuel level, air mass)
  - Required number of DFSO monitoring event have not yet completed
- 2. The lower level entry conditions are met when:
  - The injectors are off
  - The catalyst is believed to be saturated with oxygen (rear O2 indicates lean)
  - The catalyst/rear O2 has been rich at least once since the last monitor event.

## **General Catalyst Monitor Operation**

Rear HO2S sensors can be located in various ways to monitor different kinds of exhaust systems. In-line engines and many V-engines are monitored by individual bank. A rear HO2S sensor is used along with the front, fuel-control HO2S sensor for each bank. Two sensors are used on an in-line engine; four sensors are used on a V-engine. Some V-engines have exhaust banks that combine into a single underbody catalyst. These systems are referred to as Y-pipe systems. They use only one rear HO2S sensor along with the two front, fuel-control HO2S sensors. Y-pipe systems use three sensors in all. For Y-pipe systems which utilize switching front O2 sensors, the two front HO2S sensor signals are combined by the software to infer what the HO2S signal would have been in front of the monitored catalyst. The inferred front HO2S signal and the actual single, rear HO2S signal is then used to calculate the switch ratio.

Many vehicles monitor less than 100% of the catalyst volume – often the first catalyst brick of the catalyst system. Partial volume monitoring is done on LEV-II vehicles in order to meet the 1.75 \* emission-standard threshold for NMHC and NOx. The rationale for this practice is that the catalysts nearest the engine deteriorate first, allowing the catalyst monitor to be more sensitive and illuminate the MIL properly at lower emission standards.

Many applications that utilize partial-volume monitoring place the rear HO2S sensor after the first light-off catalyst can or, after the second catalyst can in a three-can per bank system. (A few applications placed the HO2S in the middle of the catalyst can, between the first and second bricks.)

The new Integrated Air/Fuel Catalyst Monitor can be used to monitor the entire catalyst volume, even on LEV-II vehicles.

Index ratios for ethanol (Flex fuel) vehicles vary based on the changing concentration of alcohol in the fuel. The malfunction threshold typically increases as the percent alcohol increases. For example, a malfunction threshold of 0.5 may be used at E10 (10% ethanol) and 0.9 may be used at E85 (85% ethanol). The malfunction thresholds are therefore adjusted based on the % alcohol in the fuel. (Note: Normal gasoline is allowed to contain up to 10% ethanol (E10)).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 16 OF 207

Vehicles with the Index Ratio Method Using a Wide Range HO2S Sensor (UEGO) or the Integrated Air/Fuel catalyst monitor employ an improved version of the EWMA algorithm.

The EWMA logic incorporates several important CARB requirements. These are:

- Fast Initial Response (FIR): The first 4 tests after a battery disconnect or code clear will process
  unfiltered data to quickly indicate a fault. The FIR will use a 2-trip MIL. This will help the service
  technician determine that a fault has been fixed.
- Step-change Logic (SCL): The logic will detect an abrupt change from a no-fault condition to a
  fault condition. The SCL will be active after the 4<sup>th</sup> catalyst monitor cycle and will also use a 2trip MIL. This will illuminate the MIL when a fault is instantaneously induced.
- Normal EWMA (NORM): This is the normal mode of operation and uses an Exponentially Weighted Moving Average (EWMA) to filter the catalyst monitor test data. It is employed after the 4<sup>th</sup> catalyst test and will illuminate a MIL during the drive cycle where the EWMA value exceeds the fault threshold. (1 trip MIL).

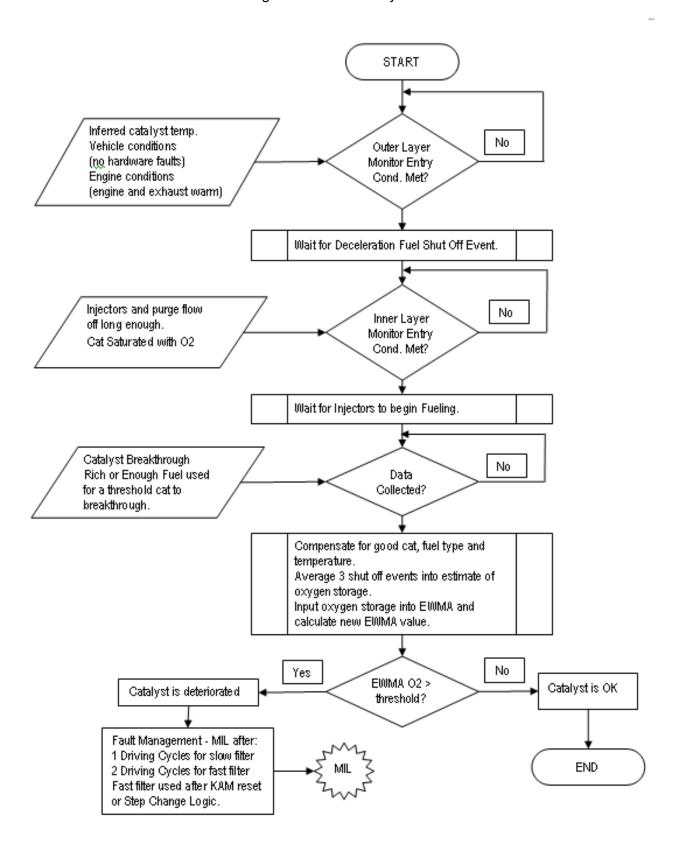
Starting in the 2010 ½ Model Year and later, the catalyst monitor will employ catalyst break-in logic. This logic will prevent the catalyst monitor from running until after a catalyst break-in period.

The catalyst monitor will not run on a new vehicle from the assembly plant until 60 minutes of time above a catalyst temperature (typically 800 to 1100 deg F) has been accumulated or 300 miles has elapsed.

New modules at the assembly plant will have an NVRAM flag initialized to delay the catalyst monitor. Service modules and re-flash software will have the flag set to allow that catalyst monitor to run. The flag cannot be reset to delay the catalyst monitor from running by any tool or service procedure.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 17 OF 207

### Integrated Air Fuel Catalyst Monitor



CATALYST MONITOR OPERATION:		
DTCs	P0420 Bank 1	
Monitor execution	once per driving cycle	
Monitor Sequence	HO2S response test complete and no DTCs (P0133/P0153) prior to calculating switch ratio, no SAIR pump stuck on DTCs (P0412/P1414), no evap leak check DTCs (P0442/P0456), no EGR stuck open DTCs (P0402)	
Sensors OK	ECT, IAT, TP, VSS, CKP, MAF, no misfire DTCs (P0300, P0310), no ignition coil DTCs (P0351-P0358), no fuel monitor DTCs (P0171, P0172, P0174. P0175), no VCT DTCs (P0010-P0017, P052A, P052B, P0344, P0365, P0369-bank1) (P0018 thru P0025, P052C, P052D, P0349, P0390, P0394-bank2).no evap system DTCs (P0443, P0446, P0455, P0457, P1450), no ETC system DTCs (P0122, P0123, P0222, P0223, P02135) (P2101, P2107, P2111, P2112) (P0600, P060A, P060B, P060C, P061B, P061C, P061D, P1674, U0300).	
Monitoring Duration	Approximately 700 seconds during appropriate FTP conditions (approximately 100 to 200 oxygen sensor switches are collected) for switching O2 control sensors Approximately 10 to 20 seconds for wide range O2 index ratio monitor.  3 Decel Fuel Cutoff events for IAF catalyst monitor	

TYPICAL IAF CATALYST MONITOR ENTRY CONDITIONS:		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Engine Coolant Temp	125 °F	220 °F
Intake Air Temp	20 °F	140 °F
Inferred catalyst mid-bed temperature	800 °F	1590 °F
Fuel Level	15%	
Air Mass		4.0 lb/min
Minimum inferred rear O2 sensor temperature	800 °F	
Fuel monitor learned within limits	98%	102%
Rear O2 sensor rich since last monitor attempt	0.45 volts	
Rear O2 sensor lean with injectors off (voltage needed to enter monitor)		0.1 volts
Rear O2 sensor reads rich after fuel turned back on (voltage needed to complete monitor)	0.45 volts	

# TYPICAL MALFUNCTION THRESHOLDS:

Catalyst monitor index ratio > 0.75 (bank monitor)

Mode \$06 reporting for IAF Catalyst Monitor

The catalyst monitor results are converted to a ratio for Mode \$06 reporting to keep the same look and feel for the service technician. The equation for calculating the Mode \$06 monitor result is:

1 – (Actual reactivation fuel/ Good catalyst reactivation fuel)

Good catalyst reactivation fuel is intended to represent what the monitor would measure for a green catalyst.

J1979 CATALYST MONITOR MODE \$06 DATA			
Monitor ID	Monitor ID Test ID Description for CAN		
\$21	\$80	Bank 1 index-ratio and max. limit	unitless

<sup>\*\*</sup> NOTE: In this document, a monitor or sensor is considered OK if there are no DTCs stored for that component or system at the time the monitor is running.

# **Misfire Monitor**

The HEV uses the Low Data Rate misfire monitor. The LDR system is capable of meeting "full-range" misfire monitoring requirements on 4-cylinder engines. The software allows for detection of any misfires that occur 6 engine revolutions after initially cranking the engine. This meets the new OBD-II requirement to identify misfires within 2 engine revolutions after exceeding the warm drive, idle rpm.

#### **Low Data Rate System**

The LDR Misfire Monitor uses a low-data-rate crankshaft position signal, (i.e. one position reference signal at 10 deg BTDC for each cylinder event). The PCM calculates crankshaft rotational velocity for each cylinder from this crankshaft position signal. The acceleration for each cylinder can then be calculated using successive velocity values. The changes in overall engine rpm are removed by subtracting the median engine acceleration over a complete engine cycle. The crankshaft acceleration is then processed by two algorithms. The first is optimized for detection of sporadic and single cylinder patterns of misfire; the second is optimized for multi-cylinder patterns. The resulting deviant cylinder acceleration values are used in evaluating misfire in the "General Misfire Algorithm Processing" section below.

#### **General Misfire Algorithm Processing**

The acceleration that a piston undergoes during a normal firing event is directly related to the amount of torque that cylinder produces. The calculated piston/cylinder acceleration value(s) are compared to a misfire threshold that is continuously adjusted based on inferred engine torque. Deviant accelerations exceeding the threshold are conditionally labeled as misfires. A threshold multiplier is used during startup CSER to compensate the thresholds for the reduction in signal amplitude during spark retard conditions.

The calculated deviant acceleration value(s) are also evaluated for noise. Normally, misfire results in a non-symmetrical loss of cylinder acceleration. Mechanical noise, such as rough roads or high rpm/light load conditions, will produce symmetrical, positive acceleration variations. A noise limit is calculated by applying a negative multiplier to the misfire threshold. If the noise limit is exceeded, a noisy signal condition is inferred and the misfire monitor is suspended for a brief interval. Noise-free deviant acceleration exceeding a given threshold is labeled a misfire.

The number of misfires is counted over a continuous 200 revolution and 1000 revolution period. (The revolution counters are not reset if the misfire monitor is temporarily disabled such as for negative torque mode, etc.) At the end of the evaluation period, the total misfire rate and the misfire rate for each individual cylinder is computed. The misfire rate evaluated every 200 revolution period (Type A) and compared to a threshold value obtained from an engine speed/load table. This misfire threshold is designed to prevent damage to the catalyst due to sustained excessive temperature (1650°F for Pt/Pd/Rh advanced washcoat and 1800°F for Pd-only high tech washcoat). If the misfire threshold is exceeded and the catalyst temperature model calculates a catalyst mid-bed temperature that exceeds the catalyst damage threshold, the MIL blinks at a 1 Hz rate while the misfire is present. If the misfire occurs again on a subsequent driving cycle, the MIL is illuminated.

If a single cylinder (i.e. > 90% of misfires attributed to one cylinder) is determined to be consistently misfiring in excess of the catalyst damage criteria, the Monitor will initiate failure mode effects management (FMEM) to prevent catalyst damage. The fuel injector to that cylinder will be shut off for a minimum of 30 seconds. Up to two cylinders may be disabled at the same time on 6 and 8 cylinder engines and one cylinder is disabled on 4 cylinder engines. Fuel control will go open loop and target lambda slightly lean (~1.05). The software may also use the throttle to limit airflow (limit boost) on GTDI engines for additional exhaust component protection. After 30 seconds, the injector is reenabled and the system returns to normal operation. On some vehicles, the software may continue FMEM beyond 30 seconds if the engine is operating at high speed or load at the end of the 30 second period. The software will wait for a low airflow condition (~1 to 5 second tip-out) to exit from FMEM. This protects the catalyst should the misfire fault still be present when the fuel injector is turned back on. If misfire on that cylinder is again detected after 200 revs (about 5 to 10 seconds), the fuel injector will be shut off again and the process will repeat until the misfire is no longer present. Note that ignition coil primary circuit failures (see CCM section) will trigger the same type of fuel injector disablement. If a particular cylinder cannot be determined, fuel control will still go open loop and target lambda slightly lean (~1.05) to limit catalyst temperatures.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 21 OF 207

If fuel level is below 15%, the misfire monitor continues to evaluate misfire over every 200 revolution period to determine if catalyst damaging misfire is present so that the fuel shut-off FMEM can be utilized to control catalyst temperatures. If this is the case, a P0313 DTC will be set to indicate that misfire occurred at low fuel levels. The P0313 DTC is set in place of engine misfire codes (P030x) if a misfire fault is detected with low fuel level.

The misfire rate is also evaluated every 1000 rev period and compared to a single (Type B) threshold value to indicate an emission-threshold malfunction, which can be either a single 1000 rev exceedance from startup or four subsequent 1000 rev exceedances on a drive cycle after start-up. Some vehicles will set a P0316 DTC if the Type B malfunction threshold is exceeded during the first 1,000 revs after engine startup. This DTC is normally stored in addition to the normal P03xx DTC that indicates the misfiring cylinder(s). If misfire is detected but cannot be attributed to a specific cylinder, a P0300 is stored. This may occur on some vehicles at higher engine speeds, for example, above 3,500 rpm.

ON PHEV applications, the misfire rate is evaluated every 1000 rev period and compared to a single (Type B) threshold value to indicate an emission-threshold malfunction on a single 1000 rev exceedance. Some vehicles will set a P0316 DTC if the Type B malfunction threshold is exceeded during the first 1,000 revs after engine startup.

#### **Profile Correction**

"Profile correction" software is used to "learn" and correct for mechanical inaccuracies in the crankshaft position wheel tooth spacing. Since the sum of all the angles between crankshaft teeth must equal 360°, a correction factor can be calculated for each misfire sample interval that makes all the angles between individual teeth equal. The LDR misfire system learns one profile correction factor per cylinder (ex. 4 correction factors for a 4 cylinder engine), while the HDR system learns 36, 40 or 60 correction factors depending on the number of crankshaft wheel teeth (ex. 35 for some V6/V8 engines, 39 for V10 engines, 58 for some I4/V6 engines).

The corrections are calculated from several engine cycles of misfire sample interval data. The correction factors are the average of a selected number of samples. In order to assure the accuracy of these corrections, a tolerance is placed on the incoming values such that an individual correction factor must be repeatable within the tolerance during learning. This is to reduce the possibility of learning bad corrections due to crankshaft velocity disturbances.

To prevent any fueling or combustion differences from affecting the correction factors, learning is done during decelfuel cutout. This can be done during closed-throttle, non-braking, de-fueled decelerations in the 60 to 40 mph range after exceeding 60 mph (likely to correspond to a freeway exit condition). In order to minimize the learning time for the correction factors, a more aggressive decel-fuel cutout strategy may be employed when the conditions for learning are present and are typically learned in a single 60 to 40 MPH deceleration, but can be learned during up to 3 such decelerations, or over a higher number of shorter duration decelerations.

For Hybrid Electric Vehicles profile is learned by using the electric drive to spin the crankshaft on the first engine shutdown during which time profile is calculated.

Since inaccuracies in the wheel tooth spacing can produce a false indication of misfire, the misfire monitor is not active until the corrections are learned. In the event of battery disconnection or loss of Keep Alive Memory the correction factors are lost and must be relearned. If the software is unable to learn a profile after three 60 to 40 mph decels, or for HEV's after 6 failed attempts to learn, a P0315 DTC is set.

#### **Neutral Profile Correction and Non-Volatile Memory**

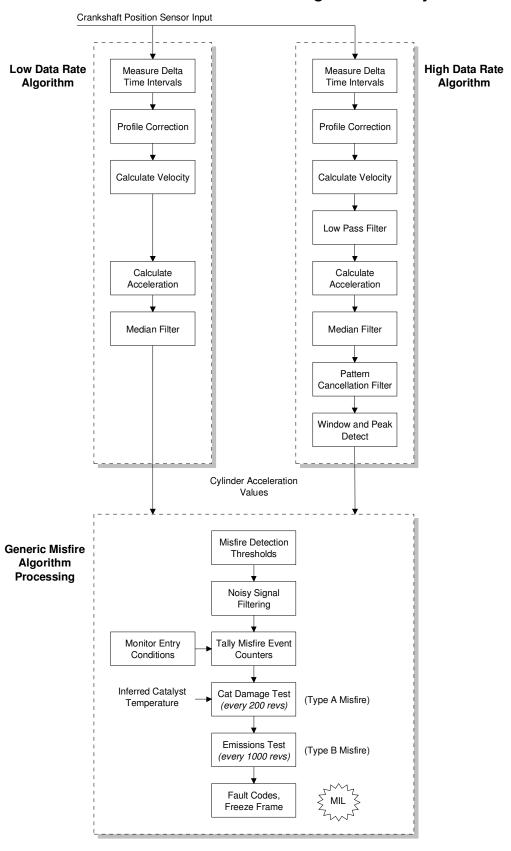
Neutral profile learning is used at End of Line to learn profile correction via a series of one or more neutral engine rpm throttle snaps. This allows the Misfire Monitor to be activated at the Assembly Plant. A Test Tool command is required to enable this method of learning, so this method will only be performed by a Plant or Service technician. Learning profile correction factors while the engine is motored by the transmission versus during 60-40 mph decels optimizes correction factors for all operating rpms and eliminates driveline/transmission and road noise effects. This improves signal to noise characteristics which means improved detection capability.

The profile correction factors learned at the Assembly Plant are stored into non-volatile memory. This eliminates the need for specific customer drive cycles. However, misfire profiles may need to be relearned in the Service Bay using a service procedure if major engine work is done or the PCM is replaced. (Re-learning is required for a reflash.)

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 22 OF 207

The engine shutdown profile learning algorithm has been left active in the software as a backup.

# Low Data Rate and High Data Rate Systems



Misfire Monitor Operation:	
DTCs	P0300 to P0304 (general and specific cylinder misfire)
	P0315 (unable to learn profile)
	P0316 (misfire during first 1,000 revs after start-up)
	P1336 (unable to synch CKP and CMP signals)
Monitor execution	Continuous, misfire rate calculated every 200 or 1000 revs
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	CKP, CMP, MAF, ECT/CHT
Monitoring Duration	Entire driving cycle (see disablement conditions below)

Typical misfire monitor entry conditions:		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Time since engine start-up	0 seconds	0 seconds
Engine Coolant Temperature	20 °F	250 °F
RPM Range (Full-Range Misfire certified, with 2 rev delay)	2 revs after exceeding 150 rpm below "drive" idle rpm	5900 rpm
Profile correction factors learned in NVRAM	Yes	
Fuel tank level	15%	

# Typical misfire temporary disablement conditions:

Temporary disablement conditions:

Closed throttle decel (negative torque, engine being driven) > -100 ft lbs

Fuel shut-off due to vehicle-speed limiting or engine-rpm limiting mode

High rate of change of torque (heavy throttle tip-in or tip out) > -1024 deg/sec or 1023 deg/sec; > -200 ft lbs/sec or > 200 ft lbs/sec

# Typical misfire monitor malfunction thresholds:

Type A (catalyst damaging misfire rate): misfire rate is an rpm/load table ranging from 20% at idle to 5% at high rpm and loads

Type B (emission threshold rate): HEV: 0.89%, PHEV: 1.7%

J1979 Misfire Mode \$06 Data			
Monitor ID	Test ID	Description for CAN	
A1	\$80	Total engine misfire and catalyst damage misfire rate (updated every 200 revolutions)	percent
A1	\$81	Total engine misfire and emission threshold misfire rate (updated every 1,000 revolutions)	percent
A1	\$82	Highest catalyst-damage misfire and catalyst damage threshold misfire rate (updated when DTC set or clears)	percent
A1	\$83	Highest emission-threshold misfire and emission threshold misfire rate (updated when DTC set or clears)	percent
A1	\$84	Inferred catalyst mid-bed temperature	°C
A2 – AD	\$0B	EWMA misfire counts for last 10 driving cycles	events
A2 – AD	\$0C	Misfire counts for last/current driving cycle	events
A2 – AD	\$80	Cylinder X misfire rate and catalyst damage misfire rate (updated every 200 revolutions)	percent
A2 – AD	\$81	Cylinder X misfire rate and emission threshold misfire rate (updated every 1,000 revolutions)	percent

# **EVAP System Monitor - Overview**

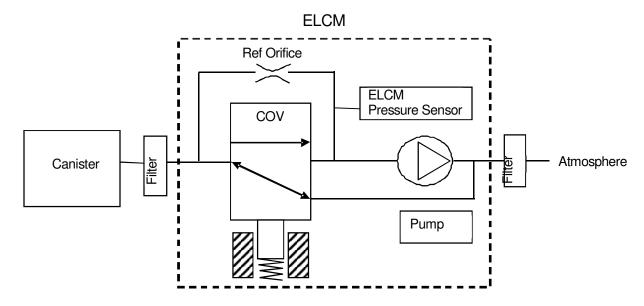
#### **Evap Monitor Overview**

For 2013 MY, a new family of Hybrid Electric Vehicles (HEV) will be introduced. Some of these vehicles will be able to charge the battery by plugging the vehicle into the grid as well as using an engine —driven generator and regenerative brakes to charge the battery while driving (Plug in Hybrid Electric Vehicles (PHEV)); others will only be using an engine —driven generator and regenerative brakes to charge the battery while driving (Hybrid Electric Vehicles (HEV)). For both types of vehicle, depending on the vehicle drive cycle, there could be very little or no engine operation during the driving cycle. This poses a challenge as historically, evaporative system leak diagnostics has relied on engine vacuum to evacuate the fuel tank and perform a large portion of the leak check and purge flow diagnostics. Additionally, the Engine Off Natural Vacuum (EONV) test that runs after key off relies on a exhaust system to heat up underbody components and reject heat into the fuel tank. It is the cooling of the fuel in the tank that generates the vacuum that enables to EONV test to perform the 0.020" leak check. If the engine does not run, both of the current engine-running and engine —off evap system diagnostics are not feasible.

In spite of this, the OBD-II regulations still require manufacturers to monitor the evaporative system for leaks and to perform a functional purge flow check. One solution is to add a vacuum pump that can generate vacuum on demand to facilitate the evaporative system diagnostics. The system that is being used is manufactured by the Denso Corporation and is called Evaporative Leak Check Module (ELCM).

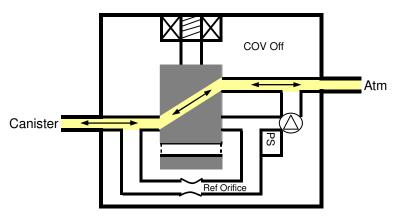


The ELCM consists of a vacuum pump, an absolute pressure sensor, a 0.020" reference orifice and a change-over valve (COV). The 0.020" reference orifice is used to obtain a 0.020" reference every time the monitor is run. This reference check becomes the threshold for passing or failing a 0.020" leak. Since the threshold is dynamically established at the beginning of the test, many of the noise/control factors (e.g. fuel level, ambient temperature, barometric pressure) are accounted for. The ELCM system is illustrated below:

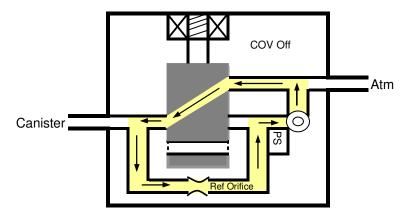


FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 26 OF 207

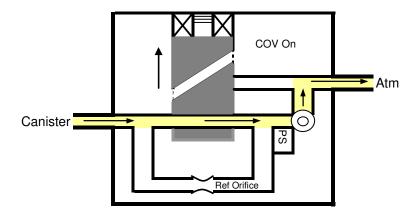
During normal operation, the ELCM is vented to atmosphere through the COV. This allows for purging during engine operation as well as fuel fill. During ELCM leak detection execution, the vacuum pump is turned on. With the pump on, vacuum is drawn across the reference orifice and the ensuing vacuum level becomes the threshold for pass/fail criteria. Once the reference is established, it is time to perform the actual leak testing. This is accomplished by energizing the COV and turning on the vacuum pump. Depending on the volume of the evaporative system being evacuated, it could take anywhere from 2 to 15 minutes for the vacuum level to saturate. Once saturation vacuum is reached, the vacuum level is compared against the vacuum level when the reference check was performed. Vacuum levels lower than the reference check are considered to be fails and vacuum levels above the reference check are considered to be passes. The diagrams below illustrate this.



Typical purge flow/fuel fill configuration. Yellow denotes the vacuum/pressure path.



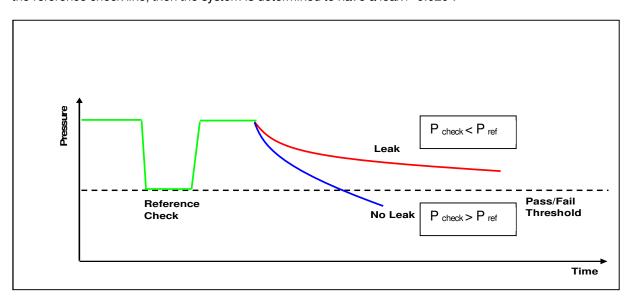
Typical reference check configuration (Pump ON). Yellow denotes the vacuum path.



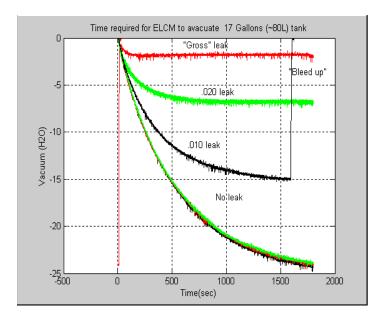
Typical system leak check configuration (Pump On, COV On). Yellow denotes the vacuum path.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 27 OF 207

Below is a typical plot of a test sequence. First, a reference check is obtained. The system is then relieved back to atmosphere before the COV is energized and the pump is turned on again. If the resulting vacuum signal crosses below the reference check line, then the system is determined to be leak-free. If the vacuum signal "flat lines" above the reference check line, then the system is determined to have a leak > 0.020".



The ELCM leak detection test runs at key off if entry conditions such as vehicle soak, fuel level, ambient temperature, BARO, etc. are satisfied. The test sequence begins with a pump warm-up time of 1 minute followed by a reference check calculation. Once the reference check is obtained, the pump is turned off which allows the vacuum to equalize to atmosphere. The changeover valve is then energized and the Evap system is evacuated. The pump stays on until the vacuum crosses the reference check threshold or the vacuum trace flat-lines above the reference check threshold.



In addition to running leak diagnostics, the evap monitor also performs numerous functional tests on the individual components that are used for the evap leak check, (i.e., stuck open/closed COV, stuck on/stuck off pump, restricted orifice, stuck open/stuck closed Tank Pressure Control Valve, stuck closed Canister Purge Valve) The monitor runs once per drive cycle during a key off condition and increments the Evap System IUMPR numerator once the ghost monitor completes. Rate based completion frequency (IUMPR) is reported via J1979 Mode\$09. The ELCM system is used in sealed (PHEV) and non-sealed (HEV) evap systems. Beginning in 17MY, Ford's HEV evap systems are all sealed

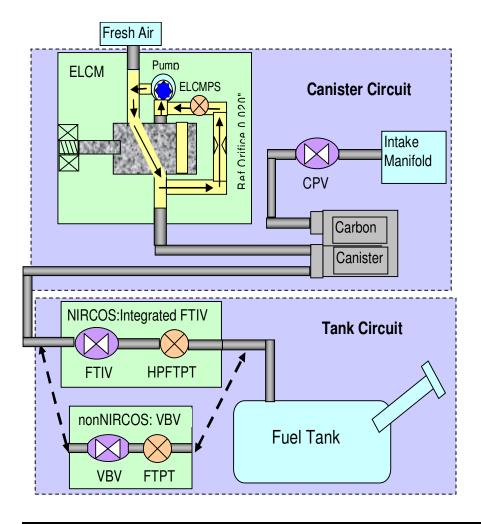
FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 28 OF 207

# Fuel Systems Hardware - Sealed (PHEV and HEV)

The sealed fuel system is designed to contain fuel vapors while not refueling. This is because the engine may not run for extended periods of time so fuel vapors do not get purged on a regular basis. Internally, the sealed system is known as a NIRCOS (Non-Integrated Refueling Canister Only System).

- Canister sized for refueling vapors only
- Uses a structurally improved steel fuel tank
- o Tank pressure relief at -2.5 psi and 5.5 psi
- Requires an electric refueling system to relieve the pressure in the tank
- Uses traditional Canister Purge Valve (CPV)
- Uses High Pressure Fuel Tank Pressure Transducer (HPFTPT)

Uses Tank Pressure Control Valve and Refueling Valve plumbed in parallel



FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 29 OF 207

# **EVAP System Monitor – Engine Running Diagnostics**

The EVAP diagnostics can be split into two categories:

Engine Running Diagnostics, consisting of:

- A purge flow/gross leak (P04ED)
- o Excessive vacuum (P1450)
- Fresh air line blockage (P144B)
- Canister Purge Valve component checks (P0443)
- o Tank Pressure Control Valve stuck closed (P2451)
- o Refueling Valve stuck closed P04B4

Engine Off (After-run) Diagnostics, consisting of:

- o The 0.020" /0.040" leak check
- o All other EVAP system and component diagnostics are executed during the engine off period.

The engine running diagnostics are described below:

The Canister Purge Valve (CPV) output circuit is checked for opens and shorts (P0443)

Note that a stuck closed CPV generates a P04ED, a leaking or stuck open CPV generates a P1450.

Canister Purge Valve Circuit Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0443 – Evaporative Emission System Purge Control Valve "A" Circuit	
Monitor execution	engine running, continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	not applicable	
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to obtain smart driver status	

Typical Canister Purge Valve Circuit Check malfunction thresholds:	
P0443: open/shorted	

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 30 OF 207

This test checks to see if the fresh air line to ELCM unit is clogged or restricted. The fresh air line flow test is performed with the engine running, the Change Over Valve (COV) off and purge flow commanded on.

Fresh Air Line Flow Check Operation:		
DTCs	P144B - EVAP System Secondary Purge Vapor Line Restricted/Blocked	
Monitor execution	engine running, once per driving cycle	
Monitor Sequence	P1450 completed and OK	
Sensors/Components OK	P04EF, P04EE, P0457, P24B9, P24BA, P24BB, P0100, P0102, P0103, P0106, P0107, P0108, P0720 P0452, P0453, P0454, P24BC, P0452, P0453, P0454, P24C1, P24C0, P2402, P2450, P0443, P2418, P2402, P2401, P2227, P2228, P2229	
Monitoring Duration		

Fresh Air Line Flow Check entry conditions		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Air Mass	> 0 lbs/min	
Vehicle Speed (vehicle speed sensor OK)	0 mph	
BARO (<8,000 ft altitude)	22.0 " Hg	
Battery Voltage	11 volts	18 volts
Closed loop fuel control (HO2S sensors OK)		
Purge Flow	0.04 lbm/min	
Manifold Vacuum	2.0 in Hg	
COV commanded open		
ELCM absolute pressure change from power up value	60 inH₂O	
TPC and RV Closed		
ELCM BARO Updated		

# Typical Fresh Air Line Flow Check malfunction thresholds:

Relative vacuum at ELCM < -20.0 inH2O / 4981.78 Pa OR

Absolute vacuum at ELCM > 60 inH2O / 14945.3 Pa

J1979 Fresh Air Line Flow Check Mode \$06 Data			
Monitor ID	Comp ID	Description for CAN	Units
\$3D	\$85	Blocked EVAP System Fresh Air Line	Pa

Note: Default values (0.0) will be displayed for all the above TIDs if the evap monitor has never completed. The appropriate TID will be updated based on the current or last driving cycle, default values will be displayed for any phases that have not completed.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 31 OF 207

This test is a functional check for excessive leakage through the Refueling Valve (RV) or Tank Pressure Control Valve (TPC) when both valves are commanded closed. The test is performed in the after run. Phase 2 of the ELCM monitor is where the EVAP system (canister side only) is evacuated using the ELCM vacuum pump. The COV as well as the vacuum pump are turned on. If the COV test passes, the monitor goes on to check both the TPC and RV valves for a stuck open condition (both valves should be closed). After a specified Phase 2 time has elapsed, an HPFTPT slope calculation is performed. If the slope calculation is less than the threshold then the fault is set since the HPFTPT shouldn't see any vacuum pull with both valves closed.

EVAP Switching Valve Functional Check Operation:			
DTCs	P2450 – EVAP System Switching Valve Performance/Stuck Open		
Monitor execution	engine off, once per driving cycle		
Monitor Sequence	ELCM components working properly (pump P2401 P2402, pressure sensor P24BA P24BB P24BC, orifice size P043E P043F, and COV P24C0 P24C1)		
Sensors/Components OK	P04EE, P0451, P0452, P0453, P0454, P2401, P2402, P24BA, P24BB P24BC, P043E P043F, P24C0, P24C1, P04B5, P04B9, P04BA, P04BB, P2418		
Monitoring Duration	10 sec in Phase# 2 of after-run leak test (P04EF)		

<b>EVAP Switching Valve Functional Check entry conditions</b>		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
RV and TPC commanded closed		
ELCM 24 hour run time		35 min
Time Since Pump ran	300 minutes	
Ambient Temperature	40 °F	95 °F
Battery Voltage	11 volts	18 volts
Engine Speed		1 rpm
Vehicle Speed	0 mph	
Fuel Level	15%	85%
Not a refueling event		
BARO (<8,000 ft altitude)	22.0 " Hg	
Accumulated Aar mass flow summation		1000000000 lbm/min
Delay period in after run	5 min	17 min
Too much time in after run		2385 sec
Tank Pressure	-50 InH₂0	125 InH₂O

### Typical EVAP Switching Valve Functional Check malfunction thresholds:

HPFTPT Pressure sensor slope in phase 2 of after run monitor <= -0.07 inH<sub>2</sub>O/sec or <= -17.44 Pa/sec.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 32 OF 207

This test is a functional check for a stuck closed Tank Pressure Control Valve (TPC) and consists of two discrete tests; an after-run portion, and a vehicle running mode portion.

The after-run portion runs during the tank side leak detection test. After a specified fuel tank evacuation time has elapsed, an HPFTPT slope calculation is performed, if the TPC had been commanded open and the HPFTPT slope is greater than TPC stuck closed limit, then the inference is that the TPC is stuck closed.

During vehicle run mode when tank pressure exceeds a calibrated value, filtered tank pressure minus instantaneous tank pressure is summed to get a pre-TPC value. When tank pressure control is commanded and after the TPC duty cycle reaches a calibrated value, filtered tank pressure minus instantaneous tank pressure is summed to get a post-TPC value. The ratio of these delta pressure values (post/pre) is compared to a threshold. The vehicle running mode test can also be executed with vacuum in the fuel tank. The tank vacuum is vented by controlling the TPC valve and looking for a minimum increase in tank pressure as read by the HPFTPT.

EVAP Switching Valve Functional Check Operation:		
DTCs	P2451 – EVAP System Switching Valve Performance/Stuck Closed	
Monitor execution	engine running, engine off, once per driving cycle	
Monitor Sequence	After-run test is same as P2450	
	Vehicle running test will run concurrently with tank pressure/vacuum control and not with the Purge flow test.	
Sensors/Components OK	P04EE, P0451, P0452, P0453, P0454, P2401, P2402, P24BA, P24BB, P24BC, P043E P043F, P24C0, P24C1, P04B5, P04B9, P04BA, P04BB, P2418, P2227, P2228, P2229, P04B0, P0443, P04B0	
Monitoring Duration	After-run test: 10 sec in Phase# 2 of after-run leak test (P04EE)	
	Vehicle running mode test: 10 sec after TPC flow is reached.	

EVAP Switching Valve Functional Check entry conditions:		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
After-Run Test		
Fuel tank pressure range	-5.0" H2O	5.0" H2O
ELCM 24 hour run time		35 min
Time Since Pump ran	300 minutes	
Ambient Temperature	40 °F	95 °F
Battery Voltage	10 volts	16 volts
Engine Speed		1 rpm
Vehicle Speed		0.1 mph
Fuel level	15%	85%
Not a refueling event		
BARO	22 in Hg	
Accumulated air mass flow summation		1000000000 lbm/min
Delay period in after run	5 min	17 min
Too much time in after run		2385 sec
Tank pressure	-50 InH2O	125 InH2O

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 33 OF 207

Vehicle Running Mode Test (under boost)		
Filtered Fuel tank pressure range	15.0" H2O	
Stabilized Fuel tank pressure change		0.25" H₂O
Minimum TPC duty cycle for data gathering	0.1%	
(actively purging)		
Vehicle Running Mode Test (under vacuum)		
Filtered Fuel tank pressure range		-30 " H₂O
Vehicle Speed	15 mph	
EVAP leak checks not running		

# Typical EVAP Switching Valve Functional Check malfunction thresholds:

# **After-Run Test:**

HPFTPT Pressure sensor slope in phase 2 of after run monitor > -0.02 inH2O/sec or > -4.98 Pa/sec.

# **Vehicle Running Mode Test (under boost):**

HPFTPT Ratio of sum of tank pressure readings (pre-test) to sum of tank pressures post test < 3.0 (unitless).

# Vehicle Running Mode Test (under vacuum):

HPFTPT at vacuum limit time exceeds >= 18.0 sec

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 34 OF 207

This test is a functional check for a stuck closed Refueling Valve (RV). The Refueling Valve stuck closed diagnostic is run every time a refueling event is requested. During a refueling event, the RV is commanded open. A P04B4 DTC will be set if the tank pressure cannot approach atmospheric pressure in a calibrated period of time.

EVAP Switching Valve Functional Check Operation:		
DTCs	P04B4 – Refueling Vapor Control Valve /Stuck Closed	
Monitor execution	engine off, once per refueling event	
Monitor Sequence	none	
Sensors/Components OK	P04EE, P04EF, P0457, P24B9, P24BA, P24BB, P0100, P0102, P0103, P0106, P0107, P0108, P0720, P0452, P0453, P0454, P24BC, P0452, P0453, P0454, P24C1, P24C0, P2402, P2450, P0443, P2418, P2402, P2401, P2227, P2228, P2229	
Monitoring Duration	< 15 sec	

EVAP Switching Valve Functional Check entry conditions				
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum		
Refuel requested				
Filtered high pressure range for fuel tank pressure.	> 10 in H <sub>2</sub> O			
Minimum Fuel Tank Pressure to enter Stuck Closed Test.	> 5 in H <sub>2</sub> O			
Battery Voltage	11 volts	18 volts		

## Typical EVAP Switching Valve Functional Check malfunction thresholds:

The delta of the starting pressure reading minus the second pressure < 3.0 in H20 or 747.27 Pa.

J1979 EVAP Switching Valve Functional Mode \$06 Data			
Monitor ID	Comp ID	Description for CAN	Units
\$3D	\$82	Vapor Blocking Valve Performance	Pa
\$3D	\$86	Fuel Tank Isolation Valve Stuck Open	Pa/sec
\$3D	\$87	Fuel Tank Isolation Valve Stuck Closed	Pa/sec

Note: Default values (0.0) will be displayed for all the above TIDs if the evap monitor has never completed. The appropriate TID will be updated based on the current or last driving cycle, default values will be displayed for any phases that have not completed.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 35 OF 207

This is a functional check for a stuck open canister purge valve. This generates too much vacuum during the purge flow test.

EVAP Flow Check Operation:		
DTCs	P1450 – Unable to Bleed Up Fuel Tank Vacuum	
Monitor execution	engine running, once per driving cycle	
Monitor Sequence		
Sensors/Components OK	P04EE. P04EF, P0457, P24B9, P24BA, P24BB, P0100, P0102, P0103, P0106, P0107, P0108, P0720, P0452, P0453, P0454, P24BC, P0452, P0453, P0454, P24C1, P24C0, P2402, P2450, P0443, P2418, P2402, P2401, P2227, P2228, P2229	
Monitoring Duration	5 sec	

EVAP Flow Check entry conditions		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Purge Flow		0.0 lbm/min
Manifold Vacuum	2.0 in Hg	
BARO (<8,000 ft altitude)	22.0 " Hg	
Battery Voltage	11 volts	18 volts
TPC and RV commanded closed		
COV commanded closed		
Closed loop fuel control (HO2S Sensors OK)		
Relative ELCM Pressure	-99 in H₂O	
Tank Pressure	-50 InH20	125 InH2O
Fuel Level	15%	85%
Intake Air Temperature	20 deg F	95 deg F
ELCM BARO Updated		
Power up Time	5 sec	15 sec
Time since purge off	4 sec	
Engine speed	200 rpm	

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 36 OF 207

## Typical EVAP Flow Check malfunction thresholds:

Relative vacuum at ELCM > -10.0 inH<sub>2</sub>O / -2490.89 Pa.

J1979 EVAP Flow Check Functional Mode \$06 Data			
Monitor ID	Comp ID	Description for CAN	Units
\$3D	\$83	Purge Valve Stuck Open	Pa
\$3D	\$84	Purge Valve Stuck Closed	Pa

Note: Default values (0.0) will be displayed for all the above TIDs if the evap monitor has never completed. The appropriate TID will be updated based on the current or last driving cycle, default values will be displayed for any phases that have not completed.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 37 OF 207

This test is a functional check for purge flow. With Change Over Valve (COV) and purge commanded on, if not enough delta vacuum is seen by the ELCM in calibrated time then the P04ED DTC will set.

EVAP Large Leak Functional Check Operation:		
DTCs	P04ED – EVAP System Large Leak Detected – Fresh Air Side	
Monitor execution	engine running, once per driving cycle	
Monitor Sequence	P1450 not running	
Sensors/Components OK	P04EE, P04EF, P0457, P24B9, P24BA, P24BB, P0100, P0102, P0103, P0106, P0107, P0108, P0720, P0452, P0453, P0454, P24BC, P0452, P0453, P0454, P24C1, P24C0, P2402, P2450, P0443, P2418, P2402, P2401, P2227, P2228, P2229	
Monitoring Duration	4 seconds	

EVAP Large Leak Functional Check entry conditions		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Vapor Blocking Valve (VBV) commanded closed		
Air Mass	> 0 lbs/min	
Vehicle Speed (Vehicle speed sensors OK)	0 mph	
Intake Air Temperature	20 deg F	95 deg F
Fuel Level	15%	85%
BARO (<8,000 ft altitude)	22.0 " Hg	
Battery Voltage	11 volts	18 volts
Purge Flow	0.08 lbm/min	
Manifold Vacuum	2.0 in Hg	
Relative ELCM Pressure	-99 in H₂O	
Time Since Last Abort	20 sec	
Tank Pressure	-50 InH20	125 InH2O
ELCM BARO Updated		
Closed loop fuel control (HO2S Sensors OK)		
ELCM absolute pressure change from power up value	60 InH2O	

## Typical EVAP Large Leak Functional Check malfunction thresholds:

Relative vacuum at ELCM < 8.0 in H<sub>2</sub>O / < 1992.71 Pa for > 4 seconds.

J1979 EVAP Flow Check Functional Mode \$06 Data			
Monitor ID	Comp ID	Description for CAN	Units
\$3D	\$83	Purge Valve Stuck Open	Pa
\$3D	\$84	Purge Valve Stuck Closed	Pa

Note: Default values (0.0) will be displayed for all the above TIDs if the evap monitor has never completed. The appropriate TID will be updated based on the current or last driving cycle, default values will be displayed for any phases that have not completed.

## **EVAP System Monitor - Engine Off Diagnostics**

### **ELCM Leak Detection 0.020" Monitor Entry Conditions**

Engine Off and Key Off (After-run) Diagnostics, consisting of:

- The 0.020" leak check
- All other EVAP system and component diagnostics are executed during the engine off period.

Note: there is a "Wait" period after key-off to ensure that ELCM pump temperature is within the specified operating temperature. The "Wait" time is a function of ambient temperature (5 - 17 min).

The entry conditions for the engine off monitor are evaluated while the vehicle is being driven, prior to shut down. Basic entry conditions for the leak diagnostics are a combination of conditions mandated by CARB and others intended to make the monitor robust to false calls.

#### Phase 0: BARO Reference/ELCM Functional Tests

The first phase starts by obtaining a BARO reading. The PCM opens the CPV and vents any trapped vacuum. After some stabilization time, with all the ELCM actuators in their unpowered state, the monitor obtains a BARO reading. Then the ELCM pump is turned on (COV not energized) to send flow through the reference orifice. If the slope of the ELCMPS pressure is less than a threshold value, then the monitor tentatively infers that the COV is stuck in the energized state and flow is not going through the reference orifice. This will set a P24C0 unless the pump functional test fails later in the test. Once the COV functional test is complete, the orifice functional test is performed. The stabilized ELCMPS pressure is compared to a threshold value to see if too much vacuum was produced. This would be an indication of a clogged/restricted orifice. In this case, the monitor aborts and a P043E DTC is set. The stabilized ELCMPS pressure is compared to a threshold value to see if too little vacuum was produced. This would be an indication of a high flow orifice. In this case, the monitor aborts and a P043F DTC is set. The last part of Phase 0 is the pump warm-up time (typically 5 min). Once the warm-up time is met, the ELCMPS pressure is compared against a threshold to determine how much vacuum was generated across the orifice during the warm-up time. Too little vacuum is an indication that the pump is stuck off in which case the monitor aborts and sets P2401 DTC. If all tests pass, monitor goes on to Phase 1.

Note: The ELCMPS sensor is an absolute sensor whereas the HPFTPT is a relative sensor. To compare the two sensors, the ELCMPS signal is converted to gauge by subtracting the BARO reading.

#### Phase 1: 1st Reference Pressure Measurement

In Phase 1, the resulting ELCMPS relative pressure is averaged and stored as a 0.020" reference. This 1st reference check is compared against a table of min and max reference pressures as a function of BARO. If the reference pressure is outside the min and max, the monitor aborts and sets a P24B9 DTC. Then, the vacuum pump is commanded off and the ELCMPS pressure is compared to atmospheric pressure. If the ELCMPS pressure does not go back up above a threshold pressure, the monitor infers that the vacuum pump is stuck on, aborts and sets a P2402 DTC. Otherwise, the monitor continues on with the next phase provided that the vacuum dissipates back near atmospheric pressure. Failure to dissipate the vacuum is indicative of blockages. The monitor aborts and next time the flow test runs, it should flag a blocked fresh air line.

#### Phase 2: Vacuum Pull/Leak Detection

Phase 2 is the most critical phase in the ELCM monitor. This is where the Evap system (canister side only or the entire system) is evacuated using the ELCM vacuum pump. The COV as well as the vacuum pump are turned on. The COV stuck functional test is performed again to check whether the COV is stuck in the de-energized position. The rate of change of the ELCMPS pressure is compared to a threshold. The monitor aborts and set a P24C1 DTC if the ELCMPS vacuum slope is too high. If the COV test passes, the monitor goes on to check the Tank Pressure Control or Refueling valve for being stuck open. The rate of change of the ELCMPS pressure is calculated again and compared to a threshold. If the slope is too low, the Tank Pressure Control or Refueling Valve is inferred to be stuck open and the monitor aborts and sets a P2450 DTC.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 39 OF 207

If the TPC valve had been commanded open and the rate of change of the ELCMPS pressure is greater than a threshold, then the TPC is inferred to be stuck closed and the monitor aborts and sets a P2451 DTC.

Once the functional tests are complete, the monitor goes on perform the leak check using the averaged, stabilized pressure. Leak test results are normalized to the reference pressure obtained in Phase 1. A normalized pressure greater than the 0.020" leak threshold (> 0.9) is a pass. The test goes on to Phase 3

If the normalized pressure never reaches 0.9 by the time the vacuum pull time has expired, the determination is that a leak is present, pending the vapor generation analysis and the monitor sets a preliminary P04EF failure flag indicating a leak on the fresh air side of the Evap system and the test goes on to Phase 5.

#### **Phase 3: Tank Pressure Evaluation**

In Phase 3, the filtered tank pressure is evaluated to determine whether the tank is leak-free or not. If there is sufficient pressure or vacuum buildup in the tank and the pressure/vacuum variation in the tank is low, the tank is properly sealed and there are no leaks. In such a case, the TPC/RV is left in its normally closed position and only the canister side of the Evap system is monitored for leaks. If the tank pressure/vacuum is near atmosphere or if the tank pressure/vacuum is high but has considerable variation, then the TPC is commanded open and the entire Evap system is monitored for leaks. The monitor goes back to phase 2 to evacuate the entire Evap system.

If the monitor fails with the TPC open, a fail flag is set to indicate a potential leak in the entire Evap system (P04EE).

. Note that there is a delay to allow the pressure to stabilize to atmospheric pressure between the tank and canister side checks.

#### Phase 4: Vapor Generation/CPV Stuck Closed (PHEV only, seal evap system)

This is the phase where the full Evap system is diagnosed for vapor generation in the case where a failure occurred in the second Phase 2 while the TPC was open. Vapor generation for the fuel results in a positive pressure build up. It is typically caused by high RVP fuels and/or hot weather. The positive pressure can overwhelm the vacuum being generated by the low flow ELCM pump. Depending on the magnitude of the vapors, an otherwise sealed Evap system could be diagnosed as having a leak; therefore, the vapor generation check is needed to qualify any leak monitor fail calls.

The vapor generation routine is based on the ideal gas law. The temperature is assumed to be constant during the duration of the test. The volume is also assumed constant since the evap system uses a rigid, metal fuel tank. Any pressure change is, therefore, due to fuel vapors. Phase 4 starts out by turning off the vacuum pump and commands the COV to its vent position. With the TPC open, the system is allowed to vent to atmosphere until the pressure climbs to near atmosphere or times out. In the case of a timeout, the tank is assumed to have intense vapors whereby even when it is open to atmosphere, the pressure is unable to equalize with atmospheric pressure. Once the vented tank pressure is close to atmosphere, the TPC is closed and the tank is sealed for a calibrated time period. A positive pressure buildup more than a threshold value results in an abort and discarding the fail call (i.e. a "no call"). In the case of a "pass" call in phase 2, the vapor generation test is not run.

#### Phase 5: 2nd Reference Pressure Measurement

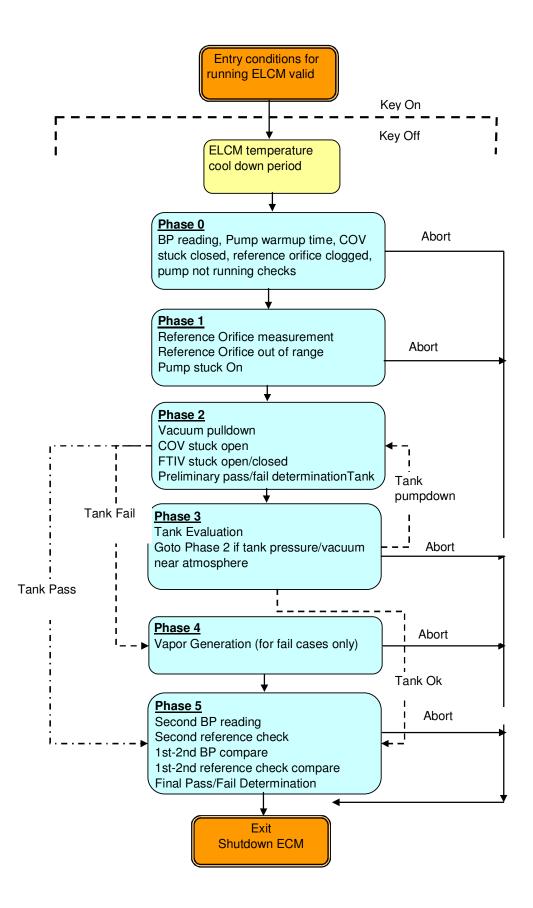
This is the final phase in the ELCM monitor. The purpose of this phase is to validate that the 1<sup>st</sup> reference check is accurate by obtaining a 2<sup>nd</sup> reference check and comparing the two. After some stabilization time, another BARO reading is obtained and compared to the first BARO reading. If the BARO readings do not match within a calibrated limit, the monitor aborts. If the BARO readings are consistent, the monitor continues by turning on the vacuum pump for a calibrated warm-up time. The 2<sup>nd</sup> reference check is compared against a table of min and max reference pressures as a function of BARO. If the reference pressure is outside the min and max, the monitor

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 40 OF 207

aborts and sets a P24B9 DTC. If the reference check is OK, then the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> reference checks are compared to each other. If they disagree by more than a calibrated limit, then the monitor aborts and sets a P24B9 DTC. If the BARO readings and reference pressures are reliable, then any evap system failures determined previously are confirmed.

NOTE – When the monitor passes, execution does not end. A "ghost" monitor continues to execute as if a failure had been detected. The ghost monitor is time based and executes to the maximum allowable time allotted for the "leak" failure case.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 41 OF 207



0.020" ELCM EVAP Monitor Operation:		
DTCs	P0457 – EVAP System Leak Detected (fuel cap loose/off)	
	P04EE – EVAP System Very Small Leak Detected – Fuel Tank Side	
	P04EF – EVAP System Very Small Leak Detected – Fresh Air Side	
Monitor execution	Once per key-off when entry conditions are met during drive.	
Monitor Sequence	none	
Sensors/Components OK	P0443, P2418, P24BE, P24BF, P2401, P2402, P144B, P04ED, P1450, P24BA, P24BB, P0451, P0452, P0453, P0454, P2610, P0112, P0113, P043E, P043F, P24C0, P24C1, P2450, P2451, P24BC, P2610, P0112, P0113	
Monitoring Duration	45 minutes in key-off state if fault present.	

Typical 0.020" EONV EVAP monitor entry conditions:		
Entry conditions seen just prior to engine off	Minimum	Maximum
ELCM 24 hour run time		35 min
Time Since Pump ran	300 minutes	
Ambient Temperature	40 °F	95 °F
Battery Voltage	11 volts	16 volts
Engine Speed		1 rpm
Vehicle Speed		0.1 mph
Fuel level	15%	85%
Not a refueling event		
BARO	22 in Hg	
Accumulated Aar mass flow summation		1000000000 lbm/min
Delay period in after run	5 min	17 min
Too much time in after run		2485 sec
Tank pressure	-50 InH2O	125 InH2O

## Typical 0.020" ELCM EVAP key-off abort conditions:

Tank pressure > 0.8 "  $H_20$  during the 5 minute key-off stabilization phase (indicates excessive vapor)

OR

Ignition key on, battery voltage low/high, refueling event, engine speed, shifter not in Park, BARO did not update, tank being vented , any other hardware/circuit fault

## Typical 0.020 ELCM EVAP monitor malfunction thresholds:

P04EE/P04EF: (0.020" leak): normalized pressure threshold (relative to reference pressure) < 0.9

AND

Phase 2 monitor timeout without crossing reference pressure; > 800 sec for full Evap system, 100 sec for fresh air side

P0457: same as P04EE except that previous driving cycle had a refueling event

J1979 EONV 0.020" EVAP monitor Mode \$06 Data			
Monitor ID	Comp ID	Description for CAN	Units
\$3C	\$84	Phase 3 stabilized leak check - Fuel Tank Side.	Pa
\$3C	\$85	Phase 3 stabilized leak check - Fresh Air Side	Pa
\$3C	\$86	ELCM Change-Over-Valve Stuck Open OFF (De-energized state)	Pa/sec
\$3C	\$87	ELCM Change-Over-Valve Stuck Closed ON (Energized state)	Pa/sec
\$3C	\$88	ELCM Pump Stuck Off	Pa
\$3C	\$89	ELCM Pump Stuck On	Pa
\$3C	\$8A	ELCM Reference Orifice - Clogged, High Flow	Pa
\$3C	\$8B	ELCM Reference Orifice - Large size, Low Flow	Pa
\$3C	\$8D	ELCM Reference Pressure Out-of-Range	Pa

Note: Default values (0.0) will be displayed for all the above TIDs if the evap monitor has never completed. The appropriate TID will be updated based on the current or last driving cycle, default values will be displayed for any phases that have not completed.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 44 OF 207

## **EVAP System Monitor Engine Off Component Checks**

Additional malfunctions that are identified as part of the evaporative system integrity check are as follows:

The Canister Purge Valve (CPV) output circuit is checked for opens and shorts (P0443)

Note that a stuck closed CPV generates a P04ED, a leaking or stuck open CPV generates a P1450.

Canister Purge Valve Circuit Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0443 – Evaporative Emission System Purge Control Valve "A" Circuit	
Monitor execution	engine off, continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	not applicable	
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to obtain smart driver status	

Typical Canister Purge Valve Circuit Check malfunction thresholds:	
P0443: open/shorted	

The **Evap Fuel Tank Switching Valve** (EVAPSV) control circuit is checked for opens and shorts (P2418). This component is the TPC (Tank Pressure Control Valve).

Note that a stuck closed TPC generates a P2451; a stuck open TPC generates a P2450.

Evap Switching Valve Check Operation:		
DTCs	P2418 - Evap Switching Valve Circuit	
Monitor execution	continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	not applicable	
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to obtain smart driver status	

Evap Switching Valve check malfunction thresholds:
P2418 (Evap Switching Valve Circuit): open/shorted

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 45 OF 207

The **Evap Fuel Tank Switching Valve** (EVAPSW) control circuit is checked for opens and shorts (P04B0). This component is the RV (Refueling Valve).

Note that a stuck closed RV generates a P04B4; a stuck open RV generates a P2450.

Evap Switching Valve Check Operation:		
DTCs	P04B0 - Refueling Vapor Control Valve Circuit	
Monitor execution	continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	not applicable	
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to obtain smart driver status	

Evap Switching Valve check malfunction thresholds:	
P04B0 (Refueling Valve Circuit): open/shorted	

The ELCM Leak Detection Pump Control Circuit is checked for opens and shorts and functionally.

ELCM Pump Control Check Operation:		
DTCs	P2401 - EVAP System Leak Detection Pump Control Circuit Low	
	P2402 - EVAP System Leak Detection Pump Control Circuit High	
Monitor execution	continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	not applicable	
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to obtain smart driver status	

Typical ELCM Pump Control check malfunction thresholds:	
P2401/P2402 - output driver open/shorted	

ELCM Pump Control Functional Check Operation:			
DTCs	P2401 - EVAP System Leak Detection Pump Control Circuit Low		
	P2402 - EVAP System Leak Detection Pump Control Circuit High		
Monitor execution	during Phase 0 of evap monitor leak check		
Monitor Sequence	Evap monitor leak detection condition met		
Sensors OK	not applicable		
Monitoring Duration	360 seconds in Phase 0, 5 seconds on Phase 1		

## Typical ELCM Pump Control Functional Check malfunction thresholds:

P2401: pressure at the end of 360 sec of warm-up time in Phase 0 too low; > -2.0 inH<sub>2</sub>O / -498.18 Pa. P2402: pressure increasing in Phase 1 after pump shut off for 5 sec; > 4.0 inH<sub>2</sub>O / 996.35 Pa.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 46 OF 207

ELCM Pump Control Flow Check Operation:			
DTCs	P043E - EVAP System Leak Detection Reference Orifice Low Flow		
	P043F - EVAP System Leak Detection Reference Orifice High Flow		
Monitor execution	once per key off, after entry conditions have been met during pre-key off drive cycle		
Monitor Sequence	during Phase 0 of evap monitor leak check		
Sensors OK	not applicable		
Monitoring Duration	60 seconds in Phase 0		

## Typical ELCM Pump Control flow check malfunction thresholds:

P043E: stabilized pressure at the end of Phase 0 too low  $<= -20.2 \text{ inH}_2\text{O} / 5031.6 \text{ Pa}$ P043F: stabilized pressure at the end of Phase 0 too high  $> -2.8 \text{ inH}_2\text{O} / > -697.45 \text{ Pa}$ .

The **Evap Leak Detection Pump Vacuum Switching Valve** / **(Change Over Valve)** control circuit is checked for opens and shorts and functionally.

Evap Vacuum Switching Valve Circuit Check Operation:			
DTCs	P24BE - EVAP Leak Detection Pump Vacuum Switching Valve Control Circuit Low		
	P24BF - EVAP Leak Detection Pump Vacuum Switching Valve Control Circuit High		
Monitor execution	continuous		
Monitor Sequence	None		
Sensors OK	not applicable		
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to obtain smart driver status		

# Evap Vacuum Switching Valve Circuit Check malfunction thresholds:

P24BE/P24BF - output driver open/shorted

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 47 OF 207

Evap Vacuum Switching Valve Functional Check Operation:				
DTCs	P24C0 - EVAP System Leak Detection Pump Vacuum Switching Valve Stuck On			
	P24C1 - EVAP System Leak Detection Pump Vacuum Switching Valve Performance/Stuck Off			
Monitor execution	P24C0 during Phase 0 of evap monitor leak check, P24C1 during Phase 2 of evap monitor leak check			
Monitor Sequence	Evap monitor leak detection condition met			
Sensors OK	P0443, P2418, P24BE, P24BF, P2401, P2402, P144B, P04ED, P1450, P24BA, P24BB, P0451, P0452, P0453, P0454, P2610, P0112, P0113, P043E, P043F, P24C0, P24C1, P2450, P2451 P24BC, P2610, P0112, P0113			
Monitoring Duration	65 seconds in Phase 0, 2 seconds in Phase 2			

## **Evap Vacuum Switching Valve check malfunction thresholds:**

P24C0: rate of change of pressure too low;  $< 1.2 \text{ inH}_2\text{O} / 174.36 \text{ Pa}$ 

P24C1: rate of change of pressure too high; > 4.0 inH2O / 996.35 Pa.

The **EVAP System Leak Detection Pump Pressure Sensor** input circuit is checked for opens and shorts, out of range values and noisy readings.

Leak Detection Pump Pressure Sensor Check Operation:			
DTCs P24BA - EVAP System Leak Detection Pump Pressure Sensor Circuit Low			
	P24BB - EVAP System Leak Detection Pump Pressure Sensor Circuit High		
	P24B9 - EVAP System Leak Detection Pump Pressure Sensor Circuit Range/Performance		
	P24BC - EVAP System Leak Detection Pump Pressure Sensor Circuit Intermittent (noisy)		
Monitor execution	continuous		
Monitor Sequence	None		
Sensors OK	not applicable		
Monitoring Duration	20 seconds for electrical malfunctions, 10 seconds for noisy sensor test		

### Typical Leak Detection Pump Pressure Sensor check malfunction thresholds:

P24BA (Circuit low): < 168.96 inH<sub>2</sub>0 / 42.08 kPa.

P0453 (Circuit high):  $> 496.93 \text{ inH}_20 / 123.78 \text{ kPa}$ .

P24B9 (Reference out of range) > -1.5 to -5.5 in H<sub>2</sub>O (function of BARO) OR

< -17.5 to -21.5 in H<sub>2</sub>O (function of BARO)

P24BC (noisy): open circuit, short circuit or > 25.0 inH<sub>2</sub>O / 6.227 kPa change between samples, sampled every 100 milliseconds, filtered fault level of 25% will set code in 10 seconds

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 48 OF 207

The **Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor** input circuit is checked for out of range values (P0452 short, P0453 open), noisy readings (P0454 noisy) and an offset (P0451 offset). This component is the FTPTHP (Fuel Tank Pressure Transducer – High Pressure).

High Pressure Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor Transfer Function				
	$Vout = (0.062247 \times P_abs + 1.492219)$			
Volts	A/D Counts in PCM	Fuel Tank Pressure, kPa	Fuel Tank Pressure, Inches H₂O	
0.317	51	-19	-76.28	
0.423	102	-17.17	-68.93	
1.035	235	-7.35	-29.51	
2.054	419	9.03	36.25	
3.073	614	25.40	101.97	
4.50	921	48.32	193.98	
4.616	970	50	200.73	

Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor Check Operation:				
DTCs	P0452 – Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor Circuit Low			
	P0453 – Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor Circuit High			
	P0454 – Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor Intermittent/Erratic (noisy)			
Monitor execution	continuous			
Monitor Sequence	None			
Sensors OK	not applicable			
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds for electrical malfunctions, 10 seconds for noisy sensor test			

## Typical Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor check malfunction thresholds:

P0452 (High Pressure Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor Circuit Low): < 0.317 volts

P0453 (High Pressure Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor Circuit High): > 4.61. Volts

P0454 (Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor Circuit Noisy): open circuit, short circuit or > 25 in H<sub>2</sub>O change between samples, sampled every 100 milliseconds, filtered fault level of 25% will set code in 10 seconds

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 49 OF 207

Fuel Tank Pressures Sensor Offset Check Operation		
DTCs	P0451(HEV Only) – Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor Range/Performance (offset)	
Monitor execution	once per driving cycle	
Monitor Sequence	No P0443 or P1450, P2402, , P2450, P2451, P2418, P24BF, P24C0 DTCs	
Sensors OK	not applicable	
Monitoring Duration	< 1 second	

Typical Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor Offset Check Entry Conditions:			
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum	
Ignition key on, engine off, engine rpm		0 rpm	
Purge Duty Cycle		0%	
Engine off (soak) time	240 min		
Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor Variation during test		0.5 in H <sub>2</sub> O	
Battery Voltage	11.0 Volts		
Not a refueling event			
Tank pressure	-17.8 InH <sub>2</sub> O	16 InH₂O	

# Typical Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor Offset Check Malfunction Thresholds:

Fuel tank pressure at key on, engine off is 0.0 in  $H_2O +/-1.7$  in  $H_2O$ 

The **Fuel Level Input** is checked for out of range values (opens/ shorts). The FLI input is obtained from the serial data link from the instrument cluster. If the FLI signal is open or shorted, the appropriate DTC is set, (P0462 circuit low and P0463 circuit high).

Finally, the Fuel Level Input is checked for noisy readings. If the FLI input changes from an in-range to out-of-range value repeatedly, a P0461 DTC is set.

Fuel Level Input Check	k Operation:
DTCs	P0460 – Fuel Level Sensor A Circuit
	P0461 – Fuel Level Sensor A Circuit Noisy
	P0462 – Fuel Level Sensor A Circuit Low
	P0463 – Fuel Level Sensor A Circuit High
Monitor execution	continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	not applicable
Monitoring Duration	30 seconds for electrical malfunctions

## Typical Fuel Level Input check malfunction thresholds:

P0460 or P0462 (Fuel Level Input Circuit Low): < 5 ohms (< 1 A/D count)

P0460 or P0463 (Fuel Level Input Circuit High): > 200 ohms (>1022 A/D counts)

P0461 (Fuel Level Input Noisy): > 40% change between samples, > 100 occurrences, sampled every 0.100 seconds

The FLI signal is also checked to determine if it is stuck. "Fuel consumed" is continuously calculated based on PCM fuel pulse width summation as a percent of fuel tank capacity. (Fuel consumed and fuel gauge reading range are both stored in KAM and reset after a refueling event or DTC storage.) If the there is an insufficient corresponding change in fuel tank level, a P0460 DTC is set.

Different malfunction criteria are applied based on the range in which the fuel level sensor is stuck.

In the range between 6% and 93%, a 17.5% difference between fuel consumed.

In the range below 6%, a 27.5% difference between fuel consumed.

In the range above 93%, a 80.5% difference between fuel consumed.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 51 OF 207

Fuel Level Input Stuck Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0460 – Fuel Level Input Circuit Stuck	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	not applicable	
Monitoring Duration	Between 6 and 93%, monitoring can take from 100 to 120 miles to complete	

## Typical Fuel Level Input Stuck check malfunction thresholds:

P0460 (Fuel Level Input Stuck):

Fuel level stuck at greater than 93%: > 80.5% difference in calculated fuel tank capacity consumed versus change in fuel level input reading

Fuel level stuck at less than 6%: > 27.5% difference in calculated fuel tank capacity consumed versus change in fuel level input reading

Fuel level stuck between 6% and 93%: > 17.5% difference in calculated fuel tank capacity consumed versus change in fuel level input reading

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 52 OF 207

### **PHEV Re-Fueling System**

The PHEV uses a pressurized evap system. In order to refuel the vehicle, the customer needs to push a fuel door button in the cabin. This allows the PCM to both open a latch on the spring-loaded fuel fill door on the outside of the vehicle to provide access to the fuel filler inlet and open a(Fuel Tank Isolation Valve) which vents the evap system to the canister and allows refueling fuel vapors to enter the canister.

If the FTIV is not open, the evap system will vent when the customer pushes the fuel fill nozzle into the fuel fill inlet and the customer will not be able to refuel the vehicle because the displaced vapors have nowhere to go).

Note that the Refuel button location on Fusion has changed to the door near driver's knee



Refuel Button

#### Refueling Process:

Customer presses "refuel button"

Signal is sent from BCM to PCM

PCM opens RV & reads FTPT

PCM sends cluster message "Please wait to refuel"

Once fuel pressure is relieved, PCM unlocks fuel door solenoid.

PCM sends cluster message "Ready to Refuel"

Customer dispenses fuel

Customer closes fuel door

PCM recognizes closed fuel door by switch state

RV closes

#### Mechanical Fail Safe Mode:

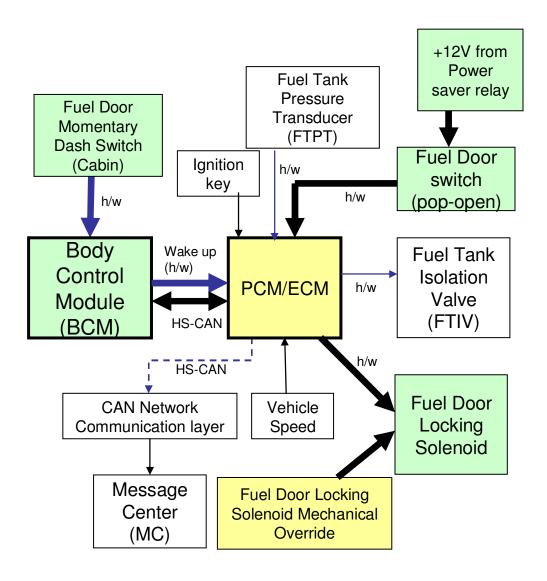
Customer presses "refuel button"

Customer activates mechanical override of locking solenoid

PCM recognizes fuel door is open by switch position

Continue from "Refueling Process", third item (PCM opens RV & reads FTPT.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 53 OF 207



The **Fuel Door Switch** is checked for opens and shorts and functionally.

Fuel Door Switch Check Operation:		
DTCs	P04BA - Fuel Fill Door Position Sensor / Switch Circuit High	
	P04B5 - Fuel Fill Door Stuck Open	
Monitor execution	continuous, engine off	
Monitor Sequence	After refueling is requested, P04B5 after refueling is completed	
Sensors OK	not applicable	
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds	

### Typical Fuel Door Switch check malfunction thresholds:

#### P04BA:

- 1) Shorted to battery (door closed). Fuel door opens after unlock solenoid is energized but no indication to PCM. No indication to PCM to close RV after refueling. RV stays open longer than required. RV will close after timeout period. RV closes if vehicle starts to move > 7 mph or after 20 minutes.
- 2) Mechanically stuck (door closed). Fuel door opens after unlock solenoid is energized but no indication to PCM. No indication to PCM to close RV after refueling. RV stays open longer than required. RV will close after timeout period. RV closes if vehicle starts to move > 7 mph or after 20 minutes.
- 3) Mechanically stuck latched. Customer cannot refuel vehicle

### P04B5:

1) Mechanically stuck (door open) or customer did not close fuel door. No indication to close RV after refueling. RV will stay open, evap system not a closed system any more, requires MIL.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 55 OF 207

The **Cabin Refuel Switch** is checked for opens and shorts and functionally.

Cabin Refuel Switch Check Operation:		
DTCs	P04C9 - Fuel Fill Door Open Request Sensor / Switch Performance / Stuck Off.	
	P04CD - Fuel Fill Door Open Request Sensor / Switch Performance / Stuck On.	
	U0140 - Lost Communication With Body Control Module	
	U0442 – Invalid Data Received from Body Control Module	
Monitor execution	continuous, engine off, > 5 mph for P04CD	
Monitor Sequence	After refueling is requested	
Sensors OK	not applicable	
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds	

#### **Cabin Refuel Switch check malfunction thresholds:**

#### P04C9:

- 1) Circuit shorted to battery. No request to open fuel door or RV. Customer cannot refuel vehicle without using manual override. Once door is open, system works as designed.
- 2) Circuit open. No request to open fuel door or RV. Customer cannot refuel vehicle without using manual override. Once door is open, system works as designed.
- 3) Button mechanically stuck not depressed. No request to open fuel door or RV. Customer cannot refuel vehicle without using manual override. Once door is open, system works as designed.

#### P04CD:

- 1) Circuit shorted to ground. Always requesting vent and fuel door unlock when vehicle is stopped and in park or neutral with park brake activated. RV will close after timeout period. Once door is open, system works as designed.
- 2) Button mechanically stuck depressed. Always requesting vent and fuel door unlock when vehicle is stopped and in park or neutral with park brake activated. RV will close after timeout period. Once door is open, system works as designed.

#### U0140/U422:

1) CAN message between BCM and PCM missing or invalid. No request to open fuel door or RV. Customer cannot refuel vehicle without using manual override. Once door is open, system works as designed.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 56 OF 207

The Fuel Fill Door Unlock Control Circuit is checked for opens and shorts and functionally.

Fuel Fill Door Unlock Control Check Operation:		
DTCs	P04C2 - Fuel Fill Door Unlock Control Circuit High	
	P04C1 - Fuel Fill Door Unlock Control Circuit Low	
Monitor execution	continuous, engine off	
Monitor Sequence	After refueling is requested	
Sensors OK	not applicable	
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds	

### **Fuel Fill Door Unlock Control check malfunction thresholds:**

#### P04C2:

1) Circuit shorted to power. (fuel door latched). Customer cannot refuel vehicle without using manual override. Once door is open, system works as designed.

#### P04C1:

- 1) Circuit shorted to ground. (fuel door unlatched). Fuel door always unlatched. Potential for fuel spit back if customer refuels without pushing cabin refuel button (not likely)
- 2) Circuit open (fuel door latched). Customer cannot refuel vehicle without using manual override.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 57 OF 207

## **Fuel System Monitor**

The adaptive fuel strategy uses O2 sensors for fuel feedback. The fuel equation includes short and long term fuel trim modifiers:

FUEL MASS = <u>AIR MASS \* SHRTFT \* LONGFT</u> EQUIV\_RATIO \* 14.64

#### Where:

Fuel Mass = desired fuel mass

Air Mass = measured air mass, from MAF sensor

SHRTFT = Short Term Fuel Trim, calculated

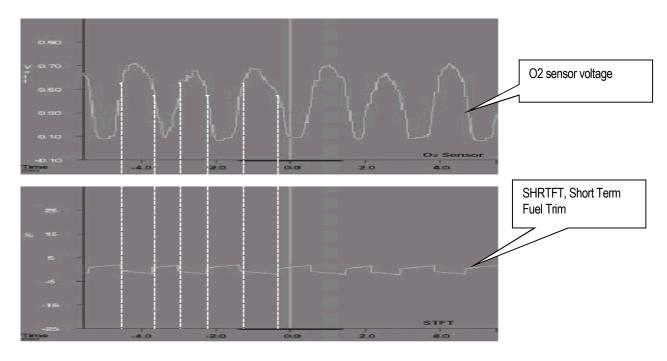
LONGFT = Long Term Fuel Trim, learned table value, stored in Keep Alive Memory

EQUIV RATIO = Desired equivalence ratio, 1.0 = stoich, > 1.0 is lean, < 1.0 is rich

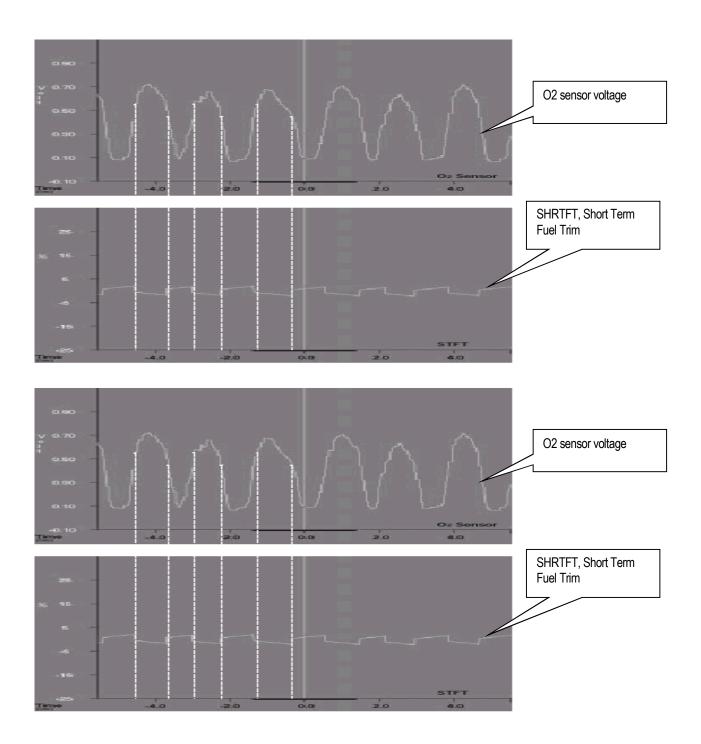
14.64 = Stoichiometric ratio for gasoline

A conventional O2 sensor (not a wide-range sensor) can only indicate if the mixture is richer or leaner than stoichiometric. During closed loop operation, short term fuel trim values are calculated by the PCM using oxygen sensor inputs in order to maintain a stoichiometric air/fuel ratio. The PCM is constantly making adjustments to the short term fuel trim, which causes the oxygen sensor voltage to switch from rich to lean around the stoichiometric point. As long as the short term fuel trim is able to cause the oxygen sensor voltage to switch, a stoichiometric air/fuel ratio is maintained.

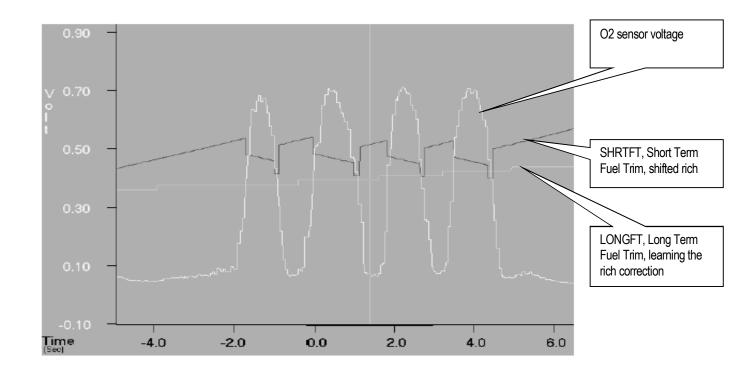
When initially entering closed loop fuel, SHRTFT starts 1.0 and begins adding or subtracting fuel in order to make the oxygen sensor switch from its current state. If the oxygen sensor signal sent to the PCM is greater than 0.45 volts, the PCM considers the mixture rich and SHRTFT shortens the injector pulse width. When the cylinder fires using the new injector pulse width, the exhaust contains more oxygen. Now when the exhaust passes the oxygen sensor, it causes the voltage to switch below 0.45 volts, the PCM considers the mixture lean, and SHRTFT lengthens the injector pulse width. This cycle continues as long as the fuel system is in closed loop operation.

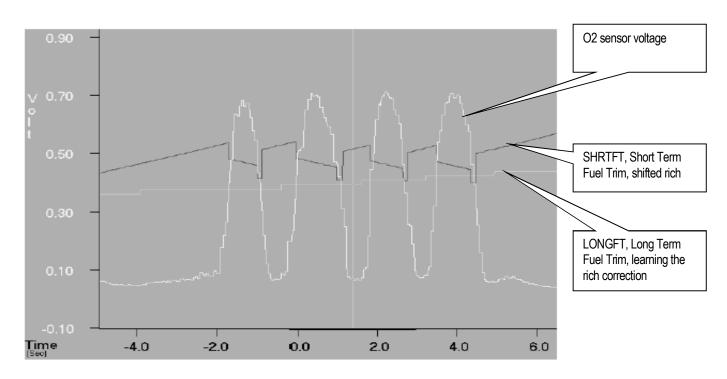


FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 58 OF 207

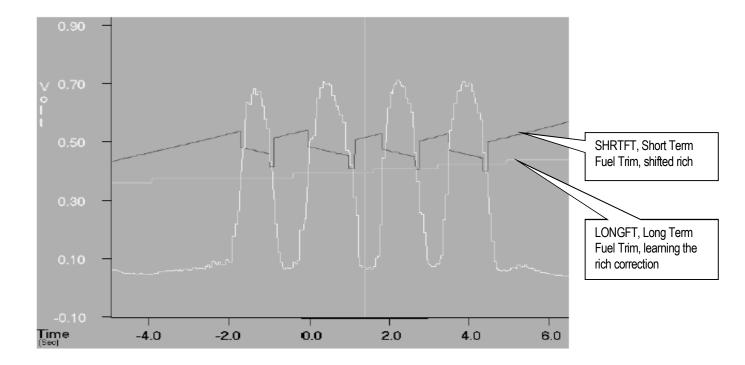


As fuel, air, or engine components age or otherwise change over the life of the vehicle, the adaptive fuel strategy learns deviations from stoichiometry while running in closed loop fuel. Corrections are only learned during closed loop operation, and are stored in the PCM as long term fuel trim values (LONGFT). They may be stored into an 8x10 rpm/load table or they may be stored as a function of air mass. LONGFT values are only learned when SHRTFT values cause the oxygen sensor to switch. If the average SHRTFT value remains above or below stoichiometry, the PCM "learns" a new LONGFT value, which allows the SHRTFT value to return to an average value near 1.0. LONGFT values are stored in Keep Alive Memory as a function of air mass. The LONGFT value displayed on the scan tool is the value being used for the current operating condition.





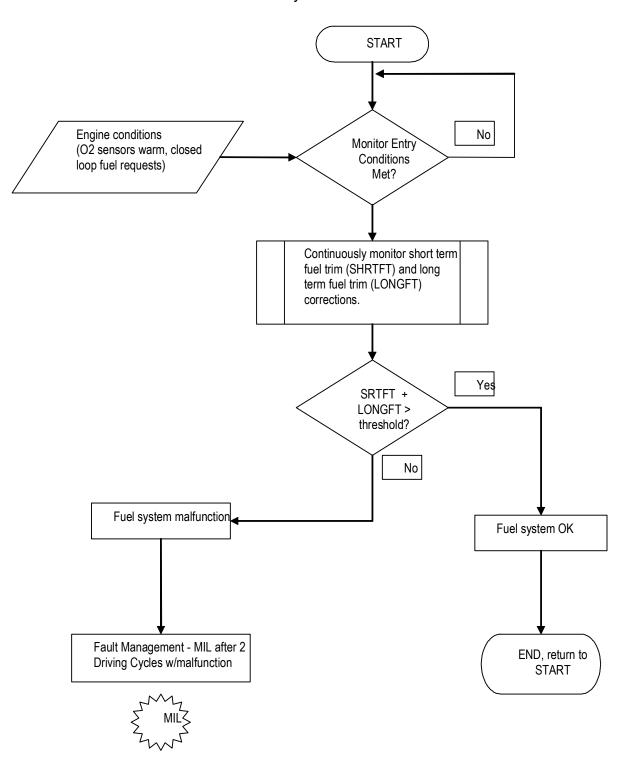
PAGE © O2 sensor voltage



As components continue to change beyond normal limits or if a malfunction occurs, the long-term fuel trim values will reach a calibratable rich or lean limit where the adaptive fuel strategy is no longer allowed to compensate for additional fuel system changes. Long term fuel trim corrections at their limits, in conjunction with a calibratable deviation in short term fuel trim, indicate a rich or lean fuel system malfunction.

Note that in the PCM, both long and short-term fuel trim are multipliers in the fuel pulse width equation. Scan tools normally display fuel trim as percent adders. If there were no correction required, a scan tool would display 0% even though the PCM was actually using a multiplier of 1.0 in the fuel pulse width equation.

## Fuel System Monitor



Fuel Monitor Operation:	
DTCs	P0171 Bank 1 Lean
	P0172 Bank 1 Rich
Monitor execution	continuous while in closed loop fuel
Monitor Sequence	none
Sensors OK	Fuel Rail Pressure (if available), IAT, CHT/ECT, MAF, TP
Monitoring Duration	2 seconds to register malfunction

Typical fuel monitor entry conditions:		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Engine Coolant Temp	155 °F	230 °F
Intake Air Temp	-40 °F	150 °F
Engine Load	30%	
Purge Duty Cycle	0%	0%
Fuel Level	15%	

## Typical fuel monitor malfunction thresholds:

Long Term Fuel Trim correction cell currently being utilized in conjunction with Short Term Fuel Trim:

Lean malfunction: LONGFT > 28%, SHRTFT > 2% Rich malfunction: LONGFT < 24%, SHRTFT < -2%

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 63 OF 207

## **FAOSC (Rear Fuel Trim) Monitor**

As the front UEGO sensor ages and gets exposed to contaminants, it can develop a rich or lean bias in its transfer function. The rear bias control (also called FAOSC – Fore/Aft Oxygen Sensor Control) system is designed to compensate for any of these bias shifts (offsets) using the downstream HO2S sensor. The "FAOS" monitor looks for any bias shifts at the stoichiometric point of the front UEGO sensor lambda curve. If the UEGO has developed a bias beyond the point for which it can be compensated for, lean (P2096, P2098) or rich (P2097, P2099) fault codes will be set.

UEGO "FAOS Monitor" Operation:	
DTCs	P2096 – Post catalyst fuel trim system too lean (Bank 1)
	P2097 – Post catalyst fuel trim system too rich (Bank 1)
Monitor execution	Continuous while in closed loop fuel
Monitor Sequence	> 30 seconds time in lack of movement test, > 30 seconds time in lack of switch test
Sensors OK	ECT, IAT, MAF, MAP, VSS, TP, ETC, FRP, FVR, DPFE EGR, VCT, VMV/EVMV, CVS, CPV, EVAPSV, FTP, CKP, CMP, ignition coils, injectors, no misfire DTCs, no system failures affecting fuel, no EVAP gross leak failure, UEGO heaters OK, rear HO2S heaters OK, no "lack of switching" malfunction, no "lack of movement" malfunction, no UEGO circuit malfunction, no rear stream 2 HO2S circuit malfunction, no rear stream 2 HO2S response rate malfunction.
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to register a malfunction

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 64 OF 207

Typical UEGO "FAOS Monitor" entry conditions:		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Closed loop stoich fuel control		
Time since engine start	2 seconds	
Engine Coolant Temp	150 °F	235 °F
Time since entering closed loop fuel	95 seconds	
Fuel Level	15%	
Short Term Fuel Trim Range	-13%	18%
Short Term Fuel Trim Absolute Change		17%
Air mass range	1.5 lbm/min	8 lbm/min
Learning conditions stability time (based on air mass)	15 seconds	
Injector fuel pulsewidth (not at minimum clip)	850 usec	
Inferred HO2S 2 Heated Tip Temperature	800 °F	
No excessive movement between currently utilized long term fuel trim cells (1 = complete change from one cell to adjacent cell)		
UEGO sensor within +/- 2 % from the fuel control target		
UEGO ASIC not in recalibration mode		
Stream1 UEGO response test not running		
Intrusive UEGO catalyst monitor not running		
Not performing intrusive UEGO Lack-of-Movement fuel control defib		
Battery Voltage	11.0 Volts	18.0 Volts

# Typical UEGO "FAOS Monitor" malfunction thresholds:

>= 5 seconds since reaching the FAOSC lean or rich limits while system bias maturity is met.

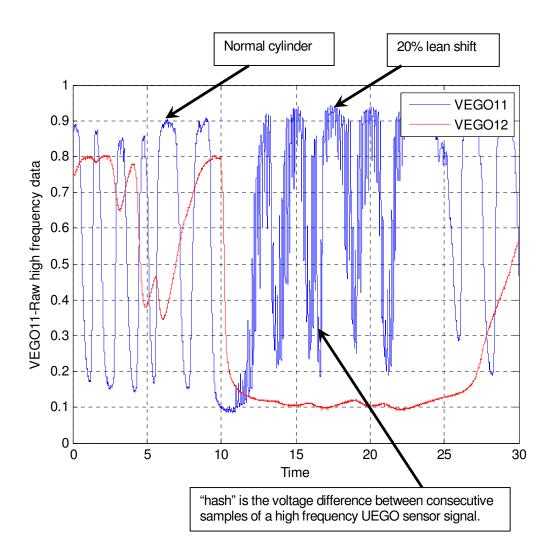
#### Air Fuel Ratio Imbalance Monitor - 02 Sensor Monitor

The Air Fuel Imbalance Monitor is designed to monitor the cylinder-to-cylinder air fuel imbalance per engine bank. When an Air Fuel (A/F) imbalance is present, the front UEGO signal becomes noisier. The monitor uses the high frequency component from the UEGO signal as an indicator of A/F imbalance. The UEGO signal may be either voltage or lambda, depending on the sensor ASIC being used.

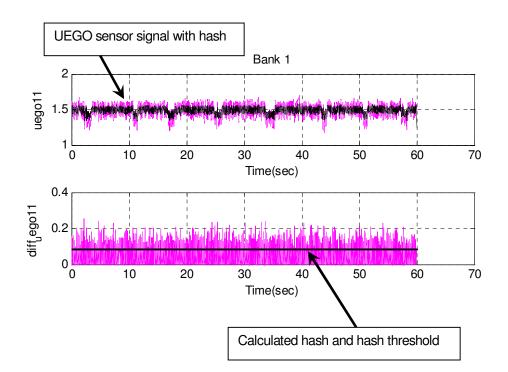
"Hash" is the difference between two consecutive front UEGO voltage samples. The UEGO signal is monitored continuously and a differential or "hash" value is continuously calculated. When the hash is below a threshold, it is indicative of normal operation. If the hash exceeds the threshold, an A/F imbalance is assumed. The hash is accumulated (summed) over a calibratable period, typically 50 engine cycles. This period is referred to as a window.

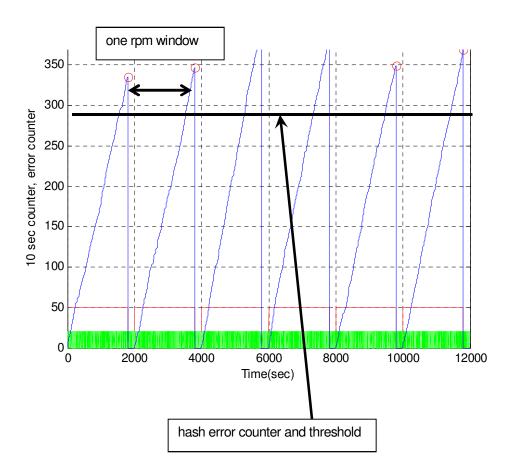
Monitor completion requires each speed load cell to acquire a calibratable number of data windows. There are up to three speed load cells. Typically, each cell must acquire 30 data windows. In addition, the total number of data windows for all the cells must be larger than a calibration value that is normally set to 20% larger than the sum of the minimum number of windows for each cell. For example, if three speed load windows are used, and each requires a minimum of 30 data windows, then the calibration for the total number of windows would be set to 3\*30\*1.2 = 108 data windows.

When the monitor completes, an A/Fuel imbalance index is calculated. The monitor index is defined as the ratio of the failed rpm windows over the total rpm windows required to complete monitor. An index is calculated for each of the speed load cells being used. The final index for each engine bank is a weighted average of each of the three cell indices. If the monitor imbalance ratio index exceeds the threshold value, an A/F imbalance DTC is set.



FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 66 OF 207





Air Fuel Ratio Imbalance Operation		
DTCs	P219A – Bank 1 Air-Fuel Ratio Imbalance	
Monitor execution	Once per driving cycle during closed loop	
Monitor Sequence	Monitor runs after fuel monitor has adapted	
Sensors OK	ECT, IAT, MAF, VSS, TP, ETC, FRP, DPFE EGR, VCT, VMV/EVMV, CVS, FTP, CKP, CMP, ignition coils, injectors, no misfire DTCs, no system failures affecting fuel, no EVAP gross leak failure, UEGO heaters OK, rear HO2S heaters OK, no "lack of switching" malfunction, no "lack of movement" malfunction, no UEGO circuit malfunction, no rear stream 2 HO2S circuit malfunction, no rear stream 2 HO2S functional DTCs, no rear stream 2 HO2S response rate malfunction.	
Monitoring Duration	Time to complete monitor ranges from 300 to 700 seconds	

Air Fuel Ratio Imbalance entry conditions:		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Closed Loop Fuel Control		
Engine Air Mass	1.5 lb/min	10 lb/min
Engine RPM	1250 rpm	2750 rpm
Engine Load	5%	75%
Engine Coolant Temp	150 °F	235 °F
Intake Air Temp	20 °F	150 °F
Throttle Position Rate of Change		0.122 v/100 msec
Fuel percentage from purge		40%
Fuel Level	15%	
Fuel monitor has adapted		
No purge on/off transition		
Fuel type leaning is complete (FFV only)		

## Air Fuel Ratio Imbalance malfunction thresholds:

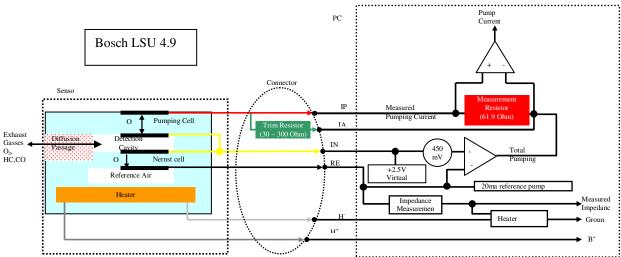
Imbalance Ratio Bank 1 > .65

J1979 AFIMN MONITOR MODE \$06 DATA			
Monitor ID	Test ID	Description	
\$81	\$80	Bank 1 imbalance-ratio and max. limit (P219A/P219B)	unitless

## **Front UEGO Monitor**

### Front UEGO Signal

The UEGO sensor infers an air fuel ratio relative to the stoichiometric (chemically balanced) air fuel ratio by balancing the amount of oxygen pumped in or out of a measurement chamber. As the exhaust gasses get richer or leaner, the amount of oxygen that must be pumped in or out to maintain a stoichiometric air fuel ratio in the measurement chamber varies in proportion to the air fuel ratio. By measuring the current required to pump the oxygen in or out, the air fuel ratio (lambda) can be estimated. Note that the measured air fuel ratio is actually the output from the UEGO ASIC pumping current controller and not a signal that comes directly from the sensor.



Bosch UEGO sensor interface:

IP – primary pumping current that flows through the sensing resistor

IA – current flow through trim resistor in parallel with sense resistor.

VM – Virtual ground, approximately 2.5 volts above PCM ground.

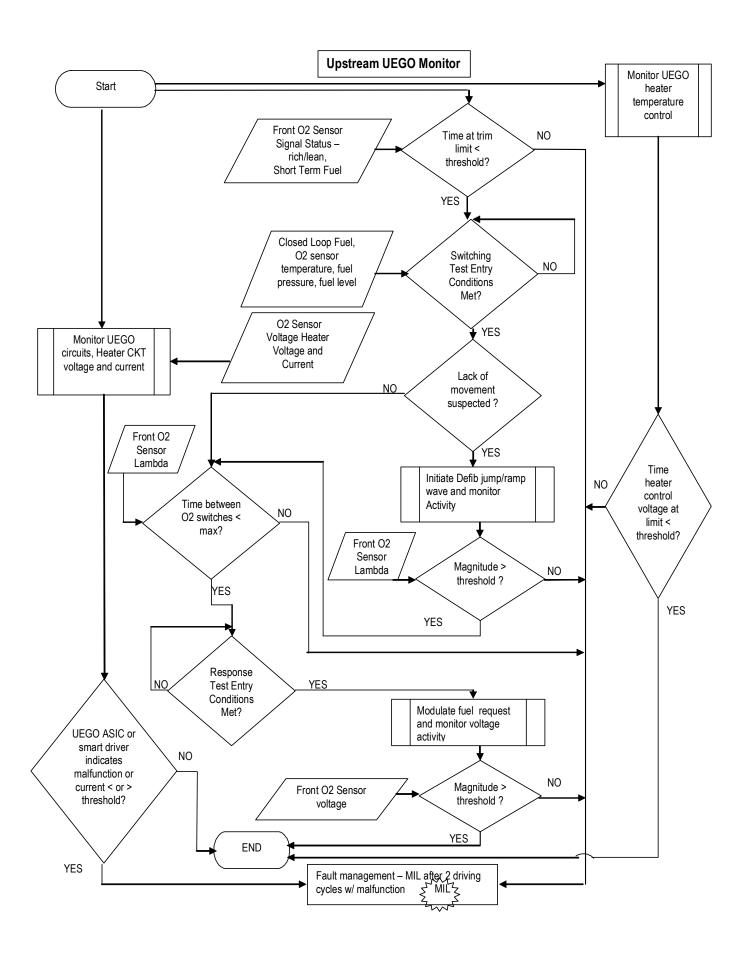
RE – Nernst cell voltage, 450mv from VM. Also carries current for pumped reference.

H+ - Heater voltage - to battery.

H- – Heater ground side – Duty cycle on/off to control sensor temperature.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017

PAGE 69 OF 207



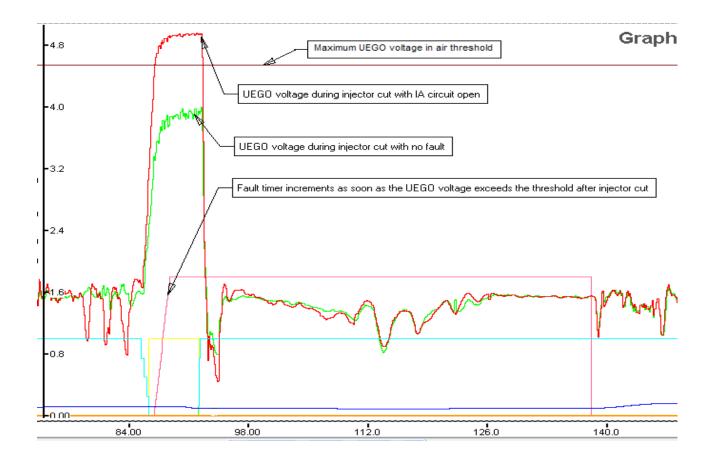
The primary component of a UEGO sensor is the diffusion passage that controls the flow of exhaust gasses into a detection cavity, a Nernst cell (essentially an EGO sensor inside the UEGO sensor) that measures the air fuel ratio in the detection cavity. A control circuitry in the ASIC chip (mounted in the PCM) controls the pumping current (IP) to keep the detection cavity near stoichiometry by holding the Nernst cell at 450 mV. This Nernst cell voltage (RE. VS) is 450mV from the virtual ground (VM, COM), which is approximately 2.5V (Bosch UEGO) or 3.6V (NTK UEGO) above the PCM ground. For the Nernst cell to generate a voltage when the detection cavity is rich, it needs an oxygen differential across the cell. In older UEGO (and HEGO) sensor designs, this was provided by a reference chamber that was connected to outside air through the wire harness that was subject to contamination and "Characteristic Shift Down (CSD)". The new UEGO sensor uses a pumped reference chamber, which is sealed from the outside to eliminate the potential for contamination. The necessary oxygen is supplied by supplying a 20 mA pumping current across the Nernst cell to pump small amounts of oxygen from the detection cavity to the reference chamber. The pumping cell pumps oxygen ions in and out of the detection cavity from and to the exhaust gasses in response to the changes in the Nernst cell voltage. The pumping current flows through the sense resistor and the voltage drop across the sense resistor is measured and amplified. Offset volts are sent out of the ASIC to one of the PCM's A/D inputs. The PCM measures the voltage supplied by the ASIC, determines the pumping current, and converts the pumping current to measured lambda. In general, the circuitry that measures the pumping current is used to estimate the air fuel ratio in the exhaust system.

The UEGO sensor also has a trim (IA) or label resistor (RL). The biggest source of part to part variability in the measured air fuel ratio is difference in the diffusion passage. This source of variation is simply the piece-to-piece differences from the manufacturing process. To compensate for this source of error, each sensor is tested at the factory and a trim or label resistor is installed in the connector. The value of this resistor is chosen to correlate with the measured difference between a particular sensor and a nominal sensor

For Bosch UEGO, the trim resistor is connected in parallel to the pumping current sense resistor and the pumping current flows through both. The trim resistor adjusts the measured pumping current back to the expected nominal value at any given air fuel ratio (correcting for the sensor to sensor variations in the diffusion passage). Small trim resistors are required for sensors that require more pumping current at any particular lambda. Conversely, for sensors with lower diffusion rates than average, less pumping current is required, so a higher than average impedance trim resistor is installed. When IA circuit is open, all of the pumping current flows through the measuring resistor which increases the measured voltage. Since the pumping current is amplified, the UEGO pumping current to lambda transfer function will reflect the error. The slope of the UEGO sensor transfer function changes, which results in the wrong output of the UEGO signal (the slope of the pumping current to lambda relationship can increase or decrease). For "stoichiometric" air/fuel control applications, an open IA circuit is not monitored since the lambda error is minimal in "stoichiometric" mode. A worst case (40 ohm resistor) open IA was tested on a 2008MY 3.5L Taurus PZEV and showed no impact on tailpipe emissions.

For "Non-Stoichiometric Closed Loop (NSCL)" air/fuel control applications, a continuous open IA diagnostics (Air Rationality Test) is required since the lambda error is more significant in this mode. The air rationality test will always monitor the UEGO sensor voltage reading during Decel Fuel Shut Off (DFSO) event. The monitor compares the UEGO sensor voltage reading in air against the expected value for pure air. If the UEGO sensor voltage during DFSO exceeds the maximum UEGO voltage in air threshold, then the fault timer increments. If the fault timer exceeds the fault time threshold, then open IA DTC P2626 and/or P2629 will set. Since transient sources of fuel in the exhaust after injector cut can contribute to the UEGO sensor voltage to read lower (rich), the air rationality monitor will not call a pass until the transient sources of fuel have been exhausted and pure air entry conditions during DFSO are met (i.e. all injectors must be off, purge must be off, no fuel must be leaking around the PCV valve, and a few transport delays must have passed to allow the last fuel transients to be exhausted leaving nothing for the sensor to see, but air).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 71 OF 207



The time spent at the limits of the short term fuel trim and the time when the measured lambda is nearly 1.0 are monitored after vehicle startup when closed loop fuel has been requested, during closed loop fuel conditions, or when open loop fuel has been requested due to UEGO sensor fault. Excessive time with short term fuel trim at its limits (up to +/- 40%), or no rich / lean activity seen since startup indicates a "lack of switch" malfunction. Also, excessive time without measured lambda deviating from 1.0, in spite of attempts to force activity (defib) in the measured lambda, indicates a "lack of movement" malfunction. Since "lack of switching" malfunctions can be caused by UEGO sensor malfunctions or by shifts in the fuel system, DTCs are stored that provide additional information for the "lack of switching" malfunction. Different DTCs indicate whether the sensor always indicates lean (P2195, P2197), or always indicates rich (P2196, P2198). "Lack of movement" malfunction, (Bosch UEGO application only), typically indicating a disconnected wire (pumping current, IP), results in P0134, P0154 DTCs.

UEGO equipped vehicles will also monitor the circuitry between the PCM and the UEGO sensor via the wire diagnostics capability included on the UEGO ASIC chip. The wire diagnostics will detect wires (IP, IA, VM/COM, RE/VS) shorted to battery, or ground, and in most cases will detect open circuits (IP, VM/COM, RE/VS). The diagnostic bits are transmitted to the PCM via SPI (serial peripheral interface). The SPI communication is validated continuously, and if a SPI communication failure is detected, fault code(s) P064D and/or P064E will be set. The ASIC is also capable of detecting internal circuitry failure; in which case, an ASIC failure DTC (P1646, P1647) along with the SPI communication failure DTC (P064D, P064E) will be set.

UEGO "Lack of Switching" Operation:		
DTCs	P2195 - Lack of switching, sensor indicates lean, Bank 1	
	P2196 - Lack of switching, sensor indicates rich, Bank 1	
Monitor execution	continuous, from startup and while in closed loop fuel or open loop fuel due to UEGO sensor fault	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	ECT, IAT, MAF, VSS, TP, ETC, VCT, VMV/EVMV, CVS, FTP, CKP, CMP, ignition coils, injectors, no misfire DTCs, no system failures affecting fuel, no EVAP gross leak failure, UEGO heaters OK, no "lack of movement" malfunction, no UEGO circuit malfunction	
Monitoring Duration	30 seconds to register a malfunction	

Typical UEGO "Lack of Switching" entry conditions:		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Closed Loop or Open Loop Requested due to UEGO sensor fault		
No fuel flow entering thru PCV during cold start when flashing off fuel in oil (for O2 Sensor Stuck Rich DTCs only)		
Inferred Ambient Temperature	-40 °F	
Time within entry conditions	10 seconds	
Fuel Tank Pressure		10 in H₂O HEV,
		50 in H₂O PHEV
Fuel Level	15%	
Battery Voltage	11.0 Volts	18.0 Volts

# Typical UEGO "Lack of Switching" malfunction thresholds:

Stage 1: > 60 seconds since reaching the short term fuel trim limits while closed loop fuel or

Stage 2: < 1 second rich or < 1 seconds lean since startup for > 60 seconds in test conditions while open loop fuel is requested due to UEGO sensor fault.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 73 OF 207

UEGO "Lack of Movement – Open Pump Current Circuit" Operation (Bosch UEGO only using Bosch CJ125 or Conti-Siemens ATIC42 ASIC):		
DTCs	P2237 – O2 Sensor Positive Current Control Circuit/Open (Bank 1, Sensor 1) (replaces P0134)	
Monitor execution	continuous, from startup and while in closed loop fuel or open loop fuel due to UEGO sensor fault	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	ignition coils, injectors, no misfire DTCs, no system failures affecting fuel, UEGO heaters OK, no "lack of switching" malfunction, no "lack of movement- open reference ground circuit" malfunction, no UEGO circuit malfunction	
Monitoring Duration	10 - 20 seconds to register a malfunction	

Typical UEGO "Lack of Movement – Open Pump Current Circuit" entry conditions (Bosch UEGO only using Bosch CJ125 or Conti-Siemens ATIC42 ASIC):		
Entry condition Minimum Maximu		
Closed Loop or Open Loop Requested due to UEGO sensor fault		
Constant lambda near stoich (~1) 0.99 1.01		
Time since no lambda activity seen since start up 30 sec		
Time since no lambda activity during intrusive Stream 1 response monitor	3 sec	
Inferred Ambient Temperature - 40		
Injector fuel pulsewidth 650		
UEGO ASIC not in recalibration mode		
No air passing through during valve overlap (scavenging).		
Battery Voltage 11.0 Volts 18.0 V		

# Typical UEGO "Lack of Movement – Open Pump Current Circuit" malfunction thresholds (Bosch UEGO only using Bosch CJ125 or Conti-Siemens ATIC42 ASIC):

Stage 1: > 20 seconds in test conditions without lambda movement during fuel control and reference current "defib" while in closed loop fuel and < = 0.05 change in lambda movement.

Stage 2: < 0.2 seconds without lambda movement since startup for > 30 seconds in test conditions during reference current "defib" while open loop fuel is requested due to UEGO sensor fault and < = 0.05 change in lambda movement.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 74 OF 207

UEGO "Lack of Movement – Open Reference Ground Circuit" Operation (Bosch UEGO only using Bosch CJ125 or Conti-Siemens ATIC42 ASIC):		
DTCs	P2251 – O2 Sensor Negative Current Control Circuit/Open (Bank 1, Sensor 1) (replaces P0130)	
Monitor execution	continuous, from startup and while in closed loop fuel or open loop fuel due to UEGO sensor fault	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	ignition coils, injectors, no misfire DTCs, no system failures affecting fuel, UEGO heaters OK, no "lack of switching" malfunction, no "lack of movement- open pump current circuit" malfunction, no UEGO circuit malfunction	
Monitoring Duration	10 - 20 seconds to register a malfunction	

Typical UEGO "Lack of Movement – Open Reference Ground Circuit " entry conditions			
(Bosch UEGO only using Bosch CJ125 or Conti-Siemens ATIC42 ASIC)			
Entry condition Minimum Maximum			
Closed Loop or Open Loop Requested due to UEGO sensor fault			
Constant lambda near stoich (~1) 0.99 1.01			
Time since no lambda activity seen since start up 30 sec			
Time since no lambda activity during intrusive Stream 1 response monitor 3 sec			
Injector fuel pulsewidth 650 usec			
UEGO ASIC not in recalibration mode			
No air passing through during valve overlap (scavenging).			
Battery Voltage 11.0 Volts 18.0 Volts			

# Typical UEGO "Lack of Movement – Open Reference Ground Circuit" malfunction thresholds (Bosch UEGO only using Bosch CJ125 or Conti-Siemens ATIC42 ASIC):

Stage 1: > 20 seconds in test conditions without lambda movement during fuel control and reference current "defib" while in closed loop fuel and > 0.05 change in lambda movement.

Stage 2: > 20 seconds in test conditions without lambda movement during reference current "defib" while open loop fuel is requested due to UEGO sensor fault and > 0.05 change in lambda movement.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 75 OF 207

UEGO equipped vehicles monitor the circuitry between the PCM and the UEGO sensor via the wire diagnostics capability included on the UEGO ASIC chip. The wire diagnostics will detect wires (IP, IA, VM/COM, RE/VS) shorted to battery, or ground, and in most cases will detect open circuits (IP, VM/COM, RE/VS). The diagnostic bits are transmitted to the PCM via SPI (serial peripheral interface). The SPI communication is validated continuously, and if a SPI communication failure is detected, fault code(s) P064D and/or P064E will be set. The ASIC is also capable of detecting internal circuitry failure; in which case, an ASIC failure DTC (P1646, P1647) along with the SPI communication failure DTC (P064D, P064E) will be set.

UEGO "Wire Diagnostic via ASIC" Operation:		
DTCs	P0131 – O2 Sensor Circuit low voltage (Bank 1, Sensor 1). Note: Sets for short to ground on Bosch UEGO- IP, IA, RE, VM; NTK UEGO – IP, VS, COM. (replaces P0130 in Bosch UEGO applications.)	
	P0132 – O2 Sensor Circuit high voltage (Bank 1, Sensor 1). Note: Sets for short to battery on Bosch UEGO- IP, IA, RE, VM; NTK UEGO – IP, VS, COM. (replaces P0130 in Bosch UEGO applications.)	
	P1646 – Linear O2 Sensor Control Chip, Bank 1.	
	P064D – Internal Control Module O2 Sensor Processor Performance (Bank 1).	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	UEGO heaters OK	
Monitoring Duration	10 seconds to register a malfunction	

Typical UEGO "Wire Diagnostics via ASIC" entry conditions:			
Entry condition Minimum Maximum			
Fault reported by UEGO ASIC			
Battery Voltage	11.0 Volts	18.0 Volts	

# Typical UEGO "Wire Diagnostics via ASIC" malfunction thresholds:

UEGO ASIC indicated malfunction, DTC sets after 10 seconds when circuit failure is present.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 76 OF 207

#### Front UEGO Slow/Delayed Response Monitor (2010 MY and beyond)

The front UEGO monitor also detects malfunctions on the UEGO sensor such as reduced response or delayed response that would cause vehicle emissions to exceed 1.5x the standard (2.5x the standard for PZEV). The response rate is evaluated by entering a special 0.5 Hz square wave, fuel control routine. This routine drives the air/fuel ratio around stoichiometry at a calibratable frequency and magnitude, producing predictable oxygen sensor signal amplitude.

A UEGO slow or delayed sensor will show an increased response time which is compared to a no-fault polygon. Combinations of the rich to lean and lean to rich response times that fall outside the polygon indicate a sensor malfunction (P0133 Bank 1).

UEGO "Response Rate" Operation:		
DTCs	P0133 - O2 Sensor Circuit Slow/Delayed Response Bank 1	
Monitor execution	once per driving cycle	
Monitor Sequence	> 30 seconds time in lack of movement test, > 30 seconds time in lack of switch test	
Sensors OK	ECT, IAT, MAF, VSS, TP, ETC, VCT, VMV/EVMV, CVS, FTP, CKP, CMP, ignition coils, injectors, no misfire DTCs, no system failures affecting fuel, no EVAP gross leak failure, UEGO heaters OK, no "lack of switching" malfunction, no "lack of movement" malfunction, no UEGO circuit malfunction, no UEGO FAOS monitor malfunction	
Monitoring Duration	6 seconds	

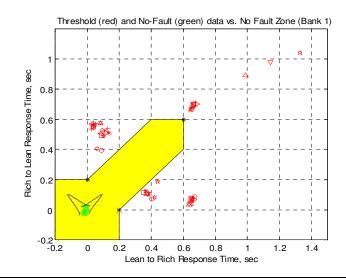
FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 77 OF 207

Frates a conditions	Minima	N 4
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Flex Fuel Composition not changing		
Not in Phase 0 of Evap Monitor, Purge intrusive test not running		
No Purge System reset		
Not performing CSER spark retard		
Not performing intrusive UEGO Lack of Movement "defib"		
No IMRC transition in progress before entering the monitor and while in monitor		
Air mass stability criteria met before entering the monitor and while in monitor		
Engine Coolant Temp	130 °F	240 °F
Intake Air Temp		140 °F
Time since entering closed loop fuel	10 seconds	
Inferred Catalyst Midbed Temperature		1600 °F
Fuel Level	15%	P
Short Term Fuel Trim Range	-9%	5%
Short Term Fuel Trim Absolute Change while in monitor		15%
Air Mass	0.5 lbs/min	
Engine Load	25%	75%
Maximum change in engine load while in monitor		25%
Vehicle Speed	30 mph	80 mph
Maximum change in vehicle speed while in monitor		9 mph
Engine RPM	1000 rpm	2500 rpm
Maximum change in engine rpm while in monitor		500 rpm
Commanded versus actual lambda range while in monitor	0.85	1.15
Cam angle		60
Cam angle movement stability criteria met while in monitor		2.0
Battery Voltage	11.0 Volts	18.0 Volts

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 78 OF 207

#### Typical UEGO "Response Rate" malfunction thresholds:

Threshold depends on failure type (symmetric slow/delay vs. asymmetric slow/delay)



Example shown with lean-to-rich (0.2 sec), rich-to-lean (0.2 sec), and symmetric (0.6 sec) thresholds creating the yellow no-fault zone. The completeted monitor results in two measurements, a lean-to-rich response time and a rich-to-lean response time. These response time values are used as x-y pairs to make a single point and then compared to the no-fault zone. Anywhere in the yellow is a pass and outside the yellow is a failure.

J1979 Front UEGO Mode \$06 Data			
Monitor ID	Test ID	Description for CAN	
\$01	\$87	UEGO11 Rich to Lean Response Time	seconds
\$01	\$88	UEGO11 Lean to Rich Response Time	seconds

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 79 OF 207

#### **UEGO Heaters**

The UEGO heater is controlled as a function of the measured impedance to keep the sensor at a near constant temperature (Bosch: 780 deg C, NTK: 830 deg C). The impedance of the Nernst cell decreases as the sensor temperature increases. This impedance is measured by periodically applying a small current across the Nernst cell and measuring the change in the voltage. The output voltage is then sent to an A/D input on the PCM. After a cold start, the UEGO heater ramps up to the maximum duty cycle to heat the sensor. After a few seconds, the measured impedance will start to decrease and when the target value is crossed, the heater goes into closed loop heater control to maintain the sensor at a near constant temperature.

The "UEGO Heater Temperature Control Monitor" tracks the time at the maximum duty cycle during the open loop sensor warm up phase. If the measured impedance does not come down to the target value to allow the system to transition from open loop heater control to closed loop heater control within a specified time, then a P0030/P0050 fault code is set. This monitor also sets a malfunction when the closed loop heater controller reaches a maximum or minimum duty cycle for a period of time indicating that the controller is no longer able to maintain the target temperature. However, if the exhaust temperature is high enough that the sensor will be above the target temperature even with no heat, then this monitor is disabled.

The UEGO heaters are also monitored for proper voltage and current. A UEGO heater voltage fault (open, shorted to ground, or shorted to battery) is determined by turning the heater on and off and looking for corresponding voltage change in the heater output driver circuit in the PCM.

A separate current-monitoring circuit monitors heater current once per driving cycle. This monitor normally runs in closed loop heater control after all the exhaust gas sensor functional tests are completed (2010 MY and earlier), however, it can also run intrusively. When the UEGO sensor indicates cold, but the heater is inferred to have been adequately warm, the current monitor is forced to run intrusively prior to the completion of the heater temperature control monitor. If the heater measured current falls below or above a calibratable threshold, the heater is assumed to be degraded or malfunctioning.

UEGO Heater Monitor Operation:		
DTCs	P0030 - HO2S Heater Control Circuit , Bank 1	
	P0135 - HO2S Heater Control Circuit, Bank 1	
	P0053 - HO2S Heater Resistance, Bank 1	
Monitor execution	once per driving cycle for heater current monitor, continuous for voltage monitoring and UEGO heater temperature control monitoring	
Monitor Sequence	Heater current monitor: Stream 1 UEGO response test completed (2010 MY and earlier), Stream 2 and 3 HO2S functional tests completed (2010 MY and earlier), Stream 1 UEGO heater voltage check completed.	
	UEGO heater temperature control monitor: Stream 1 UEGO heater voltage check completed, Stream 1 UEGO circuit check completed, intrusive heater current monitor completed (if applicable).	
Sensors OK	Heater current monitor: no HO2S/UEGO heater circuit malfunction,	
	UEHO heater temperature control monitor: no UEGO circuit malfunction, no UEGO heater circuit malfunction, no UEGO heater current monitor DTCs.	
Monitoring Duration	< 10 seconds for heater voltage check, < 5 seconds for heater current check, >= 30 seconds for the UEGO heater temperature control monitor to register a malfunction	

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 80 OF 207

Typical UEGO heater monitor entry conditions:		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Inferred UEGO unheated tip temperature (heater voltage check only)	75 °F	1562 °F
Inferred UEGO heated tip temperature (heater current check only)	1346 °F	1526 °F
UEGO heater-on time (heater current check only)	30 seconds	
Engine RPM (heater current check only)		5000 rpm
Inferred UEGO unheated tip temperature (heater control monitor only)	75 °F	1000 °F
Battery Voltage	11.0 Volts	18.0 Volts

## Typical UEGO heater check malfunction thresholds:

Smart driver status indicated malfunction (heater voltage check)

Number monitor retries allowed for malfunction > = 30 (heater voltage check)

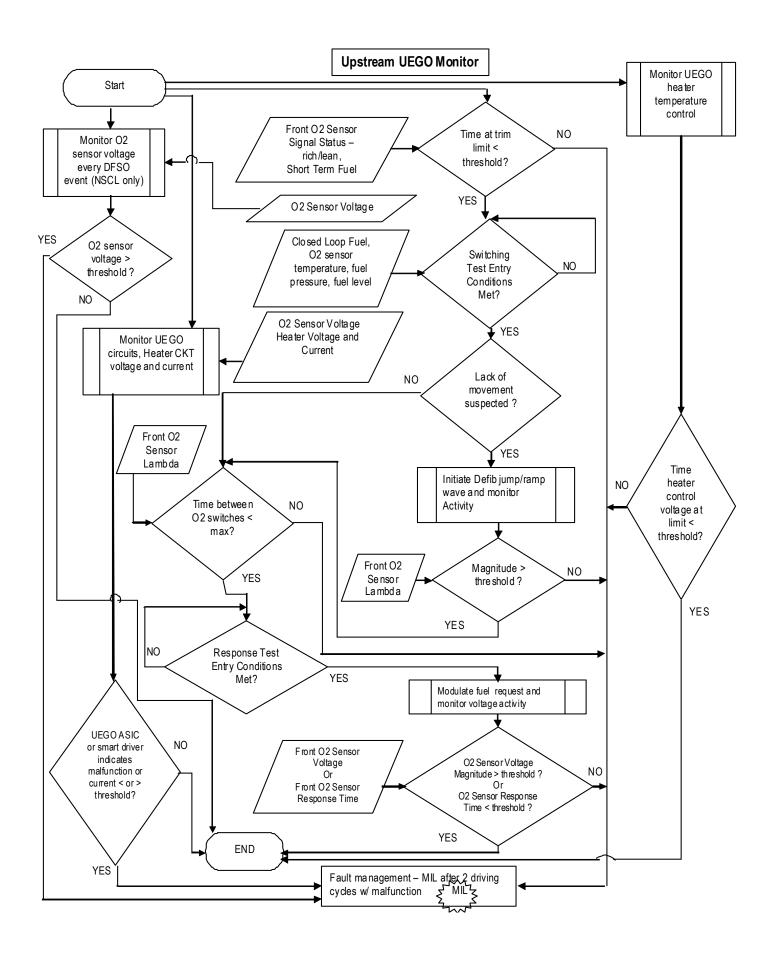
Heater current outside limits:

< 1.0 amps or > 3 amps (intrusive test) or < 0.55 amps or > 3 amps (Bosch UEGO)

UEGO heater temperature control monitor: > = 30 seconds to register a malfunction while the heater control integrator is at its maximum or minimum limit

J1979 UEGO Heater Mode \$06 Data			
Monitor ID	Test ID	Description for CAN	Units
\$01	\$81	HO2S11 Heater Current	Amps
\$05	\$81	HO2S21 Heater Current	Amps

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 81 OF 207



## **Rear HO2S Monitor**

#### Rear HO2S Signal

A functional test of the rear HO2S sensors is done during normal vehicle operation. The peak rich and lean voltages are continuously monitored. Voltages that exceed the calibratable rich and lean thresholds indicate a functional sensor. If the voltages have not exceeded the thresholds after a long period of vehicle operation, the air/fuel ratio may be forced rich or lean in an attempt to get the rear sensor to switch. This situation normally occurs only with a green catalyst (< 500 miles). If the sensor does not exceed the rich and lean peak thresholds, a malfunction is indicated.

2005 MY and beyond vehicles will monitor the rear HO2S signal for high voltage, in excess of 1.1 volts and store a unique DTC. (P0138, P0158). An over voltage condition is caused by a HO2S heater or battery power short to the HO2S signal line.

Some Partial Zero Emission Vehicles (PZEV Focus) may utilize three sets of HO2S sensors. The front sensors (HO2S11/HO2S21) are the primary fuel control sensors. The next sensors downstream in the exhaust are utilized to monitor the light-off catalyst (HO2S12/HO2S22). The last sensors downstream in the exhaust (HO2S13/Ho2S23) are utilized for very long term fuel trim in order to optimize catalyst efficiency (Fore Aft Oxygen Sensor Control). Ford's first PZEV vehicle uses a 4-cylinder engine so only the Bank 1 DTCs are utilized.

Rear HO2S Functional Check Operation:				
DTCs Sensor 2	P2270 HO2S12 Signal Stuck Lean			
	P2271 HO2S12 Signal Stuck Rich			
Monitor execution	once per driving cycle for activity test			
Monitor Sequence	> 30 seconds time in lack of movement test (UEGO only), > 30 seconds time in lack of switch test, front HO2S/UEGO response test complete			
Sensors OK	ECT, IAT, MAF, VSS, TP, ETC, FRP, DPFE EGR, VCT, VMV/EVMV, CVS, FTP, CKP, CMP, ignition coils, injectors, no misfire DTCs, no system failures affecting fuel, no EVAP gross leak failure, UEGO/HO2S (front and rear) heaters OK, no "lack of switching" malfunction, no "lack of movement" malfunction (UEGO only), no UEGO/HO2S (front and rear) circuit malfunction, no UEGO FAOS monitor malfunction, no front HO2S/UEGO response rate malfunction			
Monitoring Duration	continuous until monitor completed			

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 83 OF 207

Typical Rear HO2S functional check entry conditions:		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Stream 1 HO2S not in CSD recovery mode		
Flex Fuel Composition not changing		
Not in Phase 0 of Evaporative System Monitor		
No Purge System reset		
Purge intrusive test not running		
Not performing CSER spark retard		
Engine Coolant Temp	125 °F	240 °F
Intake Air Temp		140 °F
Time since entering closed loop fuel	10 seconds	
Inferred Catalyst Midbed Temperature		1600 °F
Heater-on Inferred Sensor(s) 2/3 HO2S Temperature Range	400 °F	1400 °F
Sensor(s) 2/3 HO2S heater-on time	90 seconds	
Short Term Fuel Trim Range	-5%	5%
Fuel Level (forced excursion only)	15%	
Inferred exhaust temperature range	400 °F	1400 °F
Throttle position	Part throttle	
Engine RPM (forced excursion only)	1000 rpm	2000 rpm
Battery Voltage	11.0 Volts	18.0 Volts

# Typical Rear HO2S functional check malfunction thresholds:

Does not exceed rich and lean HO2S voltage threshold envelope:

Rich < 0.42 volts

Lean > 0.48 volts

J1979 Rear HO2S Functional Check Mode \$06 Data			
Monitor ID	Test ID	Description for CAN	
\$02	\$01	HO2S12 sensor switch-point voltage	volts
\$06	\$01	HO2S22 sensor switch-point voltage	volts
\$03	\$01	HO2S13 sensor switch-point voltage	volts
\$07	\$01	HO2S23 sensor switch-point voltage	volts

Rear HO2S "Over Voltage Test" Operation:		
DTCs	P0138 HO2S12 Circuit High Voltage	
Monitor execution	continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	rear HO2S heaters OK	
Monitoring Duration	10 seconds to register a malfunction	

Typical HO2S "Over Voltage Test" entry conditions:				
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum		
Inferred Stream 2 HO2S Temperature	400 °F			
Battery Voltage	11.0 Volts	18.0 Volts		

# Typical HO2S "Over Voltage Test" malfunction thresholds:

HO2SS Voltage > 1.1 volts for 10 seconds for over voltage test

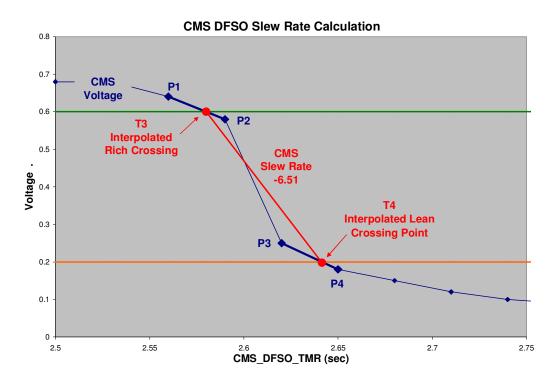
#### **Rear HO2S Decel Fuel Shut Off Response Test**

The catalyst monitor tracks and uses the length of the rear HO2S signal. The rear HO2S is also known as the Catalyst Monitor Sensor (CMS). As the catalyst ages, air/fuel fluctuations begin to break through the catalyst and the length of this signal increases. Eventually the length of the CMS signal becomes long enough to identify a failure for the catalyst monitor.

When an HO2S sensor degrades, it's response to air/fuel fluctuations slows down. The effect of a slow rear HO2S sensor on the catalyst monitor is to reduce the length of the signal. A slow CMS sensor, therefore, may cause the catalyst monitor to incorrectly pass a failed catalyst. The purpose of the Rear DFSO Response diagnostic is to ensure the catalyst monitor has a valid CMS sensor with which to perform the catalyst monitor diagnostic. The monitor is set to trigger at the level of degradation that will cause the catalyst monitor to falsely pass a malfunction threshold catalyst.

The OBD-II regulations require this monitor to utilize Decel Fuel Shut Off (DFSO). Ford plans to aggressively use DFSO starting in the 2009 MY on many applications to improve fuel economy. The DFSO rear O2 response test will be phased in coincident with this feature.

The main part of the test is the measured rich to lean response rate. It is determined by a "slew" rate calculation which determines the rich to lean slope of the sensor during a Decel Fuel Shut Off (DFSO) event which occurs during closed pedal at vehicle speeds higher than 28 mph. The calculation for the slew rate (mV/sec) is illustrated below.



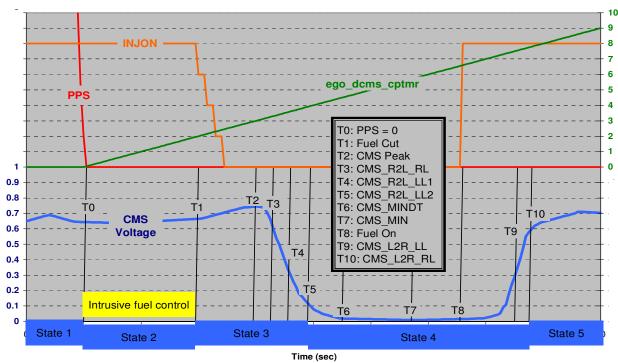
Linear interpolation is performed to calculate the Slew Rate.

- 1. For 2010 MY and earlier, interpolate between points P1 and P2 to determine the time at which the rich limit threshold of 0.6 volts was crossed. For 2011MY and beyond, capture the time at T3 at which the rich limit threshold of 0.6 volts was crossed.
- 2. For 2010 MY and earlier, interpolate between points P3 and P4 to determine the time at which the lean limit threshold of 0.2 volts was crossed. For 2011MY and beyond, capture the time at T4 at which the lean limit threshold of 0.2 volts was crossed.
- 3. Use the times and the thresholds to calculate the slope or "slew rate" of the CMS sensor from 0.6 to 0.2 volts.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 86 OF 207

Diagnostic Data Acquisition Event Plot is a schematic of what happens when the pedal is closed and the engine enters DFSO.

#### **CMS DFSO Diagnostic Event Plot**



The top half of the graph shows the following signals:

Closed pedal timer (ego\_dcms\_cptmr).

PPS (Pedal Position Sensor)

INJON (# of fuel injectors turned on)

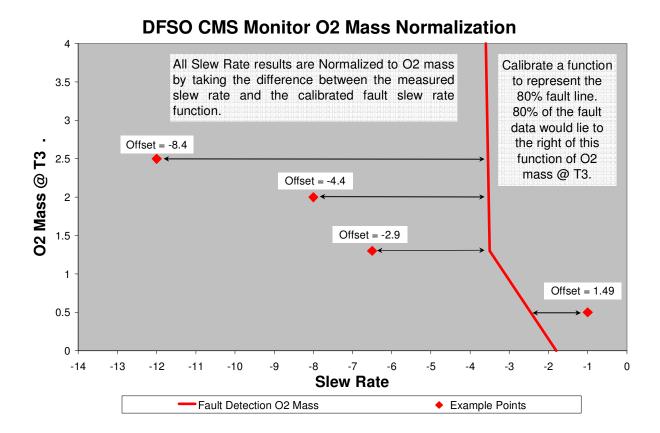
The bottom half of the graph shows a CMS signal with black lines and a "Tx" number representing all of the points of interest where the monitor captures data.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 87 OF 207

The monitor measures the CMS Rich to Lean slew rate during a DFSO event. The CMS voltage must be rich prior to the injector cut for a valid measurement event. Each fuel cut can only yield 1 valid event. The monitor will complete after 3 valid events. Additional valid event results will be stored and applied over the next drive cycle if necessary for monitor completion.

The slope or slew rate of the CMS sensor going from rich to lean is a negative number with the units of mVolts/sec. The measured slew rate changes as an O2 sensor degrades, but it will also change as a function of catalyst oxygen storage/age; therefore, the slew rate is normalized using an offset based on catalyst oxygen storage/age. The catalyst oxygen storage/age is calculated by integrating the level of oxygen mass in the exhaust stream from the time the injectors turn off to the time where the slew rate calculation begins. The fault line (red line in the chart below) is calibrated to 80% of the fault distribution for various levels of oxygen storage/catalyst age. As shown below, the integrated oxygen mass becomes smaller with catalyst age.

The final output of the monitor = the measured slew rate – normalized fault line, therefore, any positive number will represent a fault. For the step change logic the fault threshold will represent 50% of the failed distribution (~ 0.3).



FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 88 OF 207

The delayed response part of the test indicates that the sensor is stuck in range. The code sets if the sensor can't get above a calibrated rich or lean voltage prior to a calibrated time out period. This time out must happen three times in a row to set the fault. If it happens once or twice and then the response monitor completes, the counter will be reset and the sensor will have to fail 3 times in a row to again set the DTC.

Due to the fact that intrusively driving the CMS sensor rich will cause drivability and emission concerns, there are other several condition counters that have to fail prior to intrusively forcing the sensor to go rich. The sequence of events to get to the rich failure is shown below:

- Initially, in order to avoid excess emissions, the monitor will only run if the CMS voltage is rich (> 0.6 volts) or CMS sensor is transitioning from lean to rich (large positive slope . 0.2).
  - Successive failures are counted up; when the count exceeds 5 to 10 failures the monitor will now intrusively force rich fuel to run the test.
- In order to avoid a drivability issues as a result of a lean shifted bank, the first phase of intrusive control has a short time out (1 to 2 seconds).
  - Successive failures are counted up; when the count exceeds 3 failures the monitor will now intrusively force rich fuel to failure or a rich sensor.
- All controllable measures have failed to force the sensor to switch, so the strategy will drive rich until the sensor switches or the failure time out is exceeded (5 to 10 seconds).
  - Successive failures are counted up; when the count exceeds 3 failures the monitor will now set a fault (P013E for bank 1 or P014A for bank 2).

If the sensor is stuck rich (can't get lean) the fault procedure is:

- While the injectors remain off, the sensor must get lean (<0.1 volts) prior to the failure time which must be set to account for a green catalyst (5 to 10 seconds).
  - Successive failures are counted up; when the count exceeds 3 failures the monitor will now set a fault (P013E for bank 1 or P014A for bank 2).

#### **EWMA Fault Filtering**

The EWMA logic incorporates several important CARB requirements. These are:

- Fast Initial Response (FIR): The first 4 tests after a battery disconnect or code clear will process
  unfiltered data to quickly indicate a fault. The FIR will use a 2-trip MIL. This will help the service
  technician determine that a fault has been fixed.
- Step-change Logic (SCL): The logic will detect an abrupt change from a no-fault condition to a
  fault condition. The SCL will be active after the 4th DCMS monitor cycle and will also use a 2trip MIL. This will illuminate the MIL when a fault is instantaneously induced.
- Normal EWMA (NORM): This is the normal mode of operation and uses an Exponentially Weighted Moving Average (EWMA) to filter the EONV test data. It is employed after the 4th EONV test and will illuminate a MIL during the drive cycle where the EWMA value exceeds the fault threshold. (1 trip MIL).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 89 OF 207

Rear O2 <b>DFSO Res</b> p	oonse Monitor Operation:
DTCs	P013A - O2 Sensor Slow Response - Rich to Lean (Bank 1 Sensor 2)
	P013E - O2 Sensor Delayed Response - Rich to Lean (Bank 1 Sensor 2) (sensor stuck in range)
Monitor execution	Once per driving cycle, after 3 DFSO events.
Monitor Sequence	> 30 seconds time in lack of movement test (UEGO only), > 30 seconds time in lack of switch test, front HO2S/UEGO response test completed, HO2S 2 and 3 functional tests completed, HO2S/UEGO heater voltage and current checks completed, FAOS monitor system bias maturity met (UEGO applications only)
Sensors OK	ECT, IAT, MAF, VSS, TP, ETC, FRP, EGR, VCT, VMV/EVMV, CVS, FTP, CKP, CMP, ignition coils, injectors, no misfire DTCs, no system failures affecting fuel, no EVAP gross leak failure, UEGO heaters OK, rear HO2S heaters OK, no "lack of switching" malfunction, no "lack of movement" malfunction, no UEGO circuit malfunction, no rear stream 2 HO2S circuit malfunction, no rear stream 2 HO2S functional DTCs, Not performing CSER spark retard. Flex fuel composition not changing. No intrusive EGO monitors running.
Monitoring Duration	3 DFSO events.

Typical DFSO Response Monitor entry conditions:		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Air Mass	0.2	7
Vehicle Speed		90
Inlet Air Temp		140
Engine Coolant Temp	130 °F	240 °F
Catalyst Temperature (Inferred)	800 °F	1600 °F
Rear Ego Tip Temperature (Inferred)	800 °F	
Fuel Level	15%	
Fuel In Control	-9%	5%
Adaptive Fuel Within Limits	-5%	5%
Battery Voltage	11.0 Volts	18.0 Volts
Rich Voltage on downstream CMS sensor(s)	0.6 Volts	
Rich Voltage on upstream HEGO / UEGO sensor(s)	0.45 Volts (HEGO)	1 (UEGO)

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 90 OF 207

#### Typical DFSO response rate malfunction thresholds:

Rich to lean slew rate thresholds:

Normal Threshold = > 0.0 mV/secFast Initial Response Threshold = > 0.0 mV/secStep Change Threshold = > 0.3 mV/sec

Note that the thresholds use a normalized offset and the threshold is set at "zero".

#### Typical DFSO delayed response malfunction thresholds:

Successive failures are counted up (5 to 10 faults). Monitor will now intrusively force rich fuel to run the test.

Intrusive controls will time out based on drivability (1 to 2 sec).

Successive drivability failures are counted up (3 faults).

Intrusive controls will now time out at a slower time (5 to 10 sec) and count a fault. After 3 faults are counted, a DTC is set.

J1979 DFSO response rate Mode \$06 Data			
Monitor ID	Test ID	Description for CAN	
\$02	\$85	HO2S12 Fuel Shut off Rich to Lean Response Rate	mV/sec
\$02	\$86	HO2S12 Fuel Shut off Rich to Lean Response Time	msec
\$06	\$85	HO2S22 Fuel Shut off Rich to Lean Response Rate	mV/sec
\$06	\$86	HO2S22 Fuel Shut off Rich to Lean Response Time	msec

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 91 OF 207

#### **Rear HO2S Heaters,**

The HO2S heaters are monitored for proper voltage and current. A HO2S heater voltage fault is determined by turning the heater on and off and looking for corresponding voltage change in the heater output driver circuit in the PCM.

A separate current-monitoring circuit monitors heater current once per driving cycle. The heater current is actually sampled three times. If the current value for two of the three samples falls below a calibratable threshold, the heater is assumed to be degraded or malfunctioning. (Multiple samples are taken for protection against noise on the heater current circuit.)

HO2S Heater Monitor Operation:			
DTCs Sensor 2	P0141 O2 Sensor Heater Circuit, Bank 1		
	P0054 O2 Sensor Heater Resistance, Bank 1		
Monitor execution	once per driving cycle for heater current, continuous for voltage monitoring		
Monitor Sequence	Heater current monitor: Stream 1 HO2S/UEGO response test complete, Stream 2 and 3 HO2S functional tests complete, HO2S/UEGO heater voltage check complete		
Sensors OK	Heater current monitor: no HO2S/UEGO heater voltage DTCs		
Monitoring Duration	< 10 seconds for heater voltage check, < 5 seconds for heater current check		

Typical HO2S heater monitor entry conditions:		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Inferred HO2S 2/3 Temperature (heater voltage check only)	400 °F	1400 °F
Inferred HO2S 2 Temperature (heater current check only)	250 °F	1400 °F
Inferred HO2S 3 Temperature (heater current check only)	250 °F	1400 °F
HO2S 1/2/3 heater-on time (heater current check only)	30 seconds	
Engine RPM (heater current check only)		5000 rpm
Battery Voltage (heater voltage check only)	11.0	18.0 Volts

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 92 OF 207

#### Typical HO2S heater check malfunction thresholds:

Smart driver status indicated malfunction

Number monitor retries allowed for malfunction > = 30

Heater current outside limits: < 0.220 amps or > 3 amps, (NTK Thimble)

< 0.400 amps or > 3 amps, (Bosch Thimble)

< 0.550 Amps or > 3 Amps, (Bosch Planar)

< 0.465 amps or > 3 amps, (NTK Fast Light Off)

< 0.230 amps or > 3 amps, (Bosch Fast Light Off)

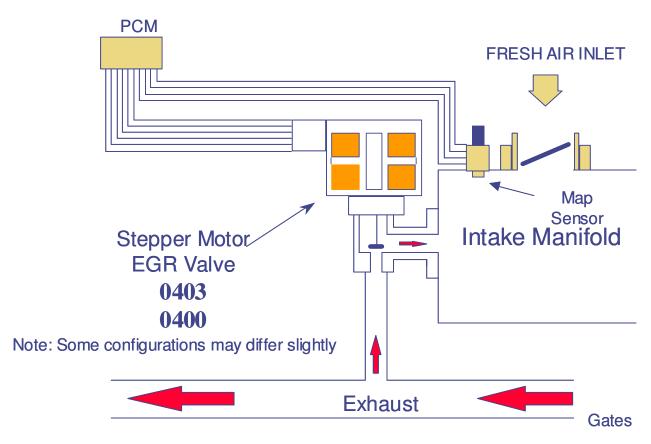
J1979 HO2S Heater Mode \$06 Data			
Monitor ID	Test ID	Description for CAN	Units
\$02	\$81	HO2S12 Heater Current	Amps
\$06	\$81	HO2S22 Heater Current	Amps
\$03	\$81	HO2S13 Heater Current	Amps
\$07	\$81	HO2S23 Heater Current	Amps

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 93 OF 207

## **Stepper Motor EGR System Monitor**

The Electric Stepper Motor EGR System uses an electric stepper motor to directly actuate an EGR valve rather than using engine vacuum and a diaphragm on the EGR valve. The EGR valve is controlled by commanding from 0 to 52 discreet increments or "steps" to get the EGR valve from a fully closed to fully open position. The position of the EGR valve determines the EGR flow. Control of the EGR valve is achieved by a non-feedback, open loop control strategy. Because there is no EGR valve position feedback, monitoring for proper EGR flow requires the addition of a MAP sensor.

# **Stepper Motor EGR System**



FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 94 OF 207

The Stepper Motor EGR Monitor consists of an electrical and functional test that checks the stepper motor and the EGR system for proper flow.

The stepper motor electrical test is a continuous check of the four electric stepper motor coils and circuits to the PCM. A malfunction is indicated if an open circuit, short to power, or short to ground has occurred in one or more of the stepper motor coils for a calibrated period of time. If a malfunction has been detected, the EGR system will be disabled, and additional monitoring will be suspended for the remainder of the driving cycle, until the next engine start-up.

EGR Stepper Monitor Electrical Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0403
Monitor execution	continuous
Monitor Sequence	none
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	4 seconds to register a malfunction

#### Stepper motor electrical check entry conditions:

Battery voltage > 11.0 volts

#### Typical EGR electrical check malfunction thresholds:

"Smart" Coil Output Driver status indicates open or short to ground, or short to power

EGR flow is monitored using an analog Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor (MAP). If a malfunction has been detected in the MAP sensor, the EGR monitor will not perform the EGR flow test.

The MAP sensor is checked for opens, shorts, or out-of-range values by monitoring the analog-to-digital (A/D) input voltage.

MAP Sensor Check Operation		
DTCs	P0107 (low voltage), P0108 (high voltage)	
Monitor execution	continuous	
Monitor Sequence	none	
Sensors OK	not applicable	
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to register a malfunction	

#### MAP electrical check entry conditions:

Battery voltage > 11.0 volts

#### Typical MAP sensor check malfunction thresholds:

Voltage < 0.19 volts or voltage > 4.88 volts

The MAP sensor is also checked for rational values. The value of inferred MAP is checked against the actual value of MAP at idle and non-idle engine operating conditions.

MAP Sensor Rationality Check Operation	
DTCs	P0106
Monitor execution	continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	not applicable
Monitoring Duration	10 seconds to register a malfunction

Typical MAP Rationality check entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Change in load		5%
Engine rpm	975 rpm	1650 rpm
Throttle Angle	1.5 degrees	83 degrees

# Typical MAP Rationality check malfunction thresholds:

Difference between inferred MAP and actual MAP > 8 in Hg

The MAP sensor is also checked for intermittent MAP faults.

MAP Sensor Intermittent Check Operation	
DTCs	P0109 (non-MIL)
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	not applicable
Monitoring Duration	2 seconds to register a malfunction

## **Typical MAP Intermittent check malfunction thresholds:**

Voltage < 0.024 volts or voltage > 4.96 volts

When EGR is delivered into the intake manifold, intake manifold vacuum is reduced and thus manifold absolute pressure (MAP) is increased. A MAP sensor and inferred MAP are used by this monitor to determine how much EGR is flowing. A MAP sensor located in the intake manifold measures the pressure when EGR is being delivered and when EGR is not being delivered. The pressure difference between EGR-on and EGR-off is calculated and averaged. If the vehicle also has a MAF sensor fitted, then the monitor also calculates and averages an inferred MAP value in the above calculation and resulting average. After a calibrated number of EGR-on and EGR-off cycles are taken, the measured and inferred MAP values are added together and compared to a minimum threshold to determine if a flow failure (P0400) in the EGR system has occurred.

EGR Flow Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0400
Monitor execution	once per driving cycle
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	CPS, ECT, IAT, MAF, MAP (P0106/7/8), TP, BARO not available yet
Monitoring Duration	200 seconds (600 data samples)

Typical EGR flow check entry conditions:		
Entry Condition	Minimum	Maximum
Inferred Ambient Air Temperature	38 °F	200 °F
Engine Coolant Temperature	130 °F	240 °F
Desired EGR Mass	0.1 lbm/min	
Engine RPM Steady (change/0.100 sec)		250 rpm
MAP Steady (change/0.100 sec)		0.35 in Hg
Engine Load Steady (change/0.100 sec)		10 %
BARO	22.5 "Hg	
Intake Manifold Vacuum	3.5 "Hg	12.0 "Hg
Vehicle Speed	25 MPH	80 MPH
Engine Throttle Angle steady(absolute change)	0.0 degrees	4.0 degrees
Purge Flow Rate		1 lbs/min

# Typical EGR flow check malfunction thresholds: < 1.0 MAP differential

J1979 Mode	\$06 Data		
Monitor ID	Test ID	Description for CAN	Units
\$31	\$82	Normalized MAP differential (range 0 - 2)	None

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 97 OF 207

#### I/M Readiness Indication

If the inferred ambient temperature is less than 20  $^{\circ}$ F, greater than 130  $^{\circ}$ F, or the altitude is greater than 8,000 feet (BARO < 22.5 "Hg), the EGR flow test cannot be reliably done. In these conditions, the EGR flow test is suspended and a timer starts to accumulate the time in these conditions. If the vehicle leaves these extreme conditions, the timer starts decrementing, and, if conditions permit, will attempt to complete the EGR flow monitor. If the timer reaches 800 seconds, the EGR flow test is disabled for the remainder of the current driving cycle and the EGR Monitor I/M Readiness bit will be set to a "ready" condition after one such driving cycle. Two such consecutive driving cycles are required for the EGR Monitor I/M Readiness bit to be set to a "ready" condition.

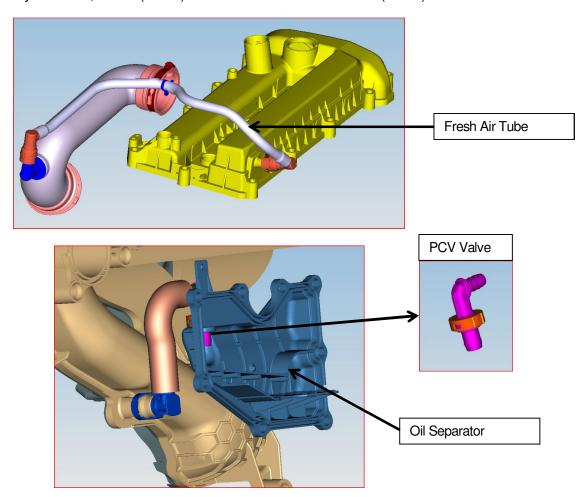
FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 98 OF 207

#### **PCV System Monitor – Naturally Aspirated Engine with MAF Sensor**

The engine crankcase contains cylinder blow by vapors which consist of combustion byproducts, unburned fuel and moisture. The PCV system is designed to evacuate these crankcase vapors so that they don't contaminate the engine oil and induct them into the intake manifold so that they can be burned in the engine. The PCV hose connects the crankcase to the intake manifold through the PCV valve which is normally mounted to the rocker cover. The fresh air hose connects the Air Induction System (AIS) to the other rocker cover (on a V engine) to provide fresh, filtered clean air into the crankcase as the crankcase vapors are evacuated. The PCV valve has a spring loaded, tapered pintle and orifice that limits the amount of crankcase vapors that are inducted into the engine. The least amount of flow occurs during idle when manifold vacuum is high. As engine load increases, manifold vacuum decreases which allow more flow. At WOT there is no flow through the PCV valve. Blow by vapors will get inducted into the AIS through the fresh air tube.

The PCV valve is installed into an oil separator that is bolted to the side of the block. The PCV valve is designed to last the full useful life of the engine and is not designed to be removed from the oil separator. The PVC valve is connected to the intake manifold hose using a quick connect. Because the PCV valve cannot be removed from the oil separator, the quick connect will be disconnected in the event vehicle service is required. Molded plastic lines are used from the PCV valve to the intake manifold. The diameter of the lines and the intake manifold have been increased to 0.625" so that inadvertent disconnection of the quick connect will cause either an immediate engine stall or will not allow the engine to be restarted. The crank case ventilation hose on the cam cover is connected to the air induction system using quick connects. The cam cover also incorporates an oil separator.

In the event that the vehicle does not stall if the line between the intake manifold and PCV valve is disconnected, the vehicle will have a large vacuum leak that will cause the vehicle to run lean at idle. This will illuminate the MIL after two consecutive driving cycles and will store one or more of the following codes: Lack of O2 sensor switches, Bank 1 (P2195), Fuel System Lean, Bank 1 (P0171) and MAP/Baro sensor intermittent (P0109).



FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 99 OF 207

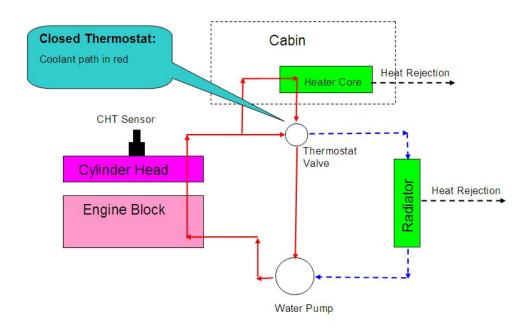
#### **Thermostat Monitor**

For the 2009 MY, the thermostat test has been enhanced to reduce the time it takes to identify a malfunctioning thermostat. The enhanced monitor includes a model which infers engine coolant temperature.

During a cold start, when the thermostat should be closed, the monitor uses a model of ECT to determine whether actual ECT should have crossed the Warm Up Temperature (WUT) threshold. The engine coolant temperature warm-up model compensates for the following thermal characteristics:

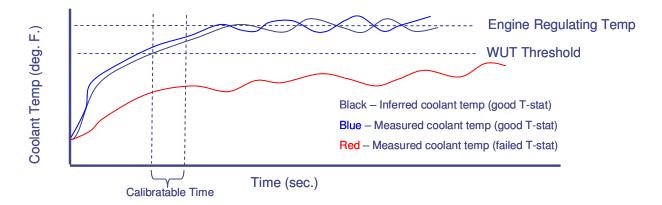
- 1. Coolant heating (heat source):
  - Combustion heating (engine speed and load based).
  - Cooling system heaters (electric or fuel-fired new for 2013 MY)
- 2. Coolant cooling (heat sink):
  - Due to cylinder cut-out (DFSO or powertrain limiting).
    - Injectors are cut but still pumping air through the engine. Increased cooling compared to engine shut-down.
  - Due to engine shut-down. (Stop/Start and Hybrid new for 2013 MY).
- 3. Coolant flow rate:
  - Mechanical water pumps have been replace on some applications with clutched water pumps or electric water pumps.

# **Engine Cooling System**



Once the ECT model exceeds the WUT threshold, after a calibratable time delay, measured ECT is compared to the same WUT threshold to determine if ECT has warmed up enough. If ECT has warmed up to at least the WUT threshold, the thermostat is functioning properly. If ECT is too low, the thermostat is most likely stuck open and a P0128 is set.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 100 OF 207



The WUT threshold is normally set to 20 degrees F below the thermostat regulating temperature.

There are some circumstances that could lead to a false diagnosis of the thermostat. These are conditions where the vehicle cabin heater is extracting more heat than the engine is making. One example where this can occur is on large passenger vans which have "dual" heaters, one heater core for the driver and front passengers and another heater core for the passengers in the rear of the vehicle. At very cold ambient temperatures, even a properly functioning thermostat may never warm up to regulating temperature. Another example is a vehicle that is started and simply sits at idle with the heater on high and the defroster fan on high.

There are two features that are used to prevent a false thermostat diagnosis. For vehicles with dual heaters, the WUT threshold is reduced at cold ambient temperatures below 50 deg F. For cases where the engine is not producing sufficient heat, a timer is used to track time at idle or low load conditions (e.g. decels). If the ratio of time at idle/low load versus total engine run time exceeds 50% at the time the fault determination is made, the thermostat diagnostic does not make a fault determination for that driving cycle, i.e. "no-call".

THERMOSTAT MONITOR OPERATION		
DTC	P0128 - Coolant Thermostat (Coolant temperature below thermostat regulating temperature)	
Monitor Execution	Once per driving cycle, during a cold start	
Monitoring Duration	Drive cycle dependent. Monitor completes in less than 300 seconds when inferred ECT exceeds threshold(at 70 deg F ambient temperature)	

TYPICAL THERMOSTAT MONITOR ENTRY AND COMPLETION CONDITIONS			
Entry conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Engine Coolant Temperature at start	None	125 °F	
Intake Air Temperature at start (ambient temp)	20 °F	None	
Inferred Percent Ethanol (flex fuel vehicles only)	Learned	N/A	
Completion condition	Minimum	Maximum	
Modeled ECT	180 °F	None	
Time Since Modeled ECT Exceeded WUT Threshold	3 sec.	None	
Time at Idle/Low Load Compared with Total Engine Run Time	None	50%	

TYPICAL MALFUNCTION THRESHOLD	
Engine Coolant Temperature < 160 °F (for the 180 °F thermostat)	

#### **Time To Closed Loop Monitor**

For the 2015 MY, an additional monitor was added to ensure that the fuel control system entered into stoichiometric closed loop fuel control within a manufacturer specified (reasonable) amount of time. The primary determination for entering stoich closed loop control is engine coolant temperature (ECT) and load. Load is monitored via the fuel monitor, thus leaving ECT with a monitoring requirement.

Engine coolant temperature is already modelled to fulfill the thermostat monitoring requirements, however, thermostat regulating temperature is typically 192 deg F while stoich closed loop temperature is typically 50 deg F. This means that the same ECT model can be used, but with different thresholds.

The stoich closed loop ECT threshold is a function of load - a higher ECT value is used at higher loads. The monitor software will pull the ECT value from the calibration table at the minimum load (idle) and use it as the worst case value for the stoich closed loop threshold.

The time to closed loop monitor shares the ECT model with the thermostat monitor. If the modelled ECT reaches the closed loop stoich temperature threshold and actual ECT does not achieve the same temperature (within a tolerance) after a given time interval, a P0125 DTC is set.

Similar to the thermostat test, the test is disabled under conditions where monitoring would be unreliable, e.g., high percentage of time at idle.

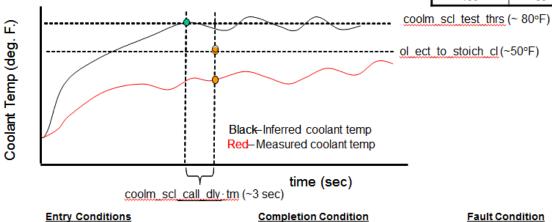
Because the thermostat test does not run below 20 deg F, the model accuracy is not understood at those temperatures. For Phase #1 (2015 MY-2016 MY), the time to closed loop monitor will detect faults above 20 deg F, similar to the thermostat monitor. For Phase #2 (2016 MY 2017MY+) a different algorithm is planned for ambients below 20 deg F.

# Time to Closed Loop Test using Inferred ECT Model

Stoich Closed Loop Threshold
ol ect to stoich cl=
ECT when stoich closed loop commanded

# ECT Model Threshold coolm\_scl\_test\_thrs = Stoich Closed Loop Threshold + Phase#1 test tolerance fn(Amb Temp)

	Phase#1
Amb Temp	Tolerance
-40	250
19	250
20	30
70	30
100	30



Ambient temp at start > 20°F, Inferred ECT > coolm scl test thrs

ECT at start < coolm scl test thrs (~ 80°F) for ~ 3 sec and engine idle ratio < ~50%

Completion Condition
Inferred ECT > coolm scl test thrs ECT < ol ect to stoich cl (~50°F)

The angle of the cooling of the coo

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 102 OF 207

TIME TO CLOSED LOOP MONITOR OPERATION		
DTC	P0125 - Insufficient Coolant Temp For Closed Loop Fuel Control	
Monitor Execution	Once per driving cycle, during a cold start	
Monitoring Duration	Drive cycle	

TYPICAL TIME TO CLOSED LOOP MONITOR ENTRY AND COMPLETION CONDITIONS		
Entry conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Engine Coolant Temperature at start	None	80 °F
Intake Air Temperature at start (ambient temp)	20 °F	None
Inferred Percent Ethanol (flex fuel vehicles only)	Learned	N/A
Completion condition	Minimum	Maximum
Modeled ECT	80 °F	None
Time Since Modeled ECT Exceeded Threshold	3 sec.	None
Time at Idle/Low Load Compared with Total Engine Run Time	None	50%

# TYPICAL TIME TO CLOSED LOOP MALFUNCTION THRESHOLD

Engine Coolant Temperature < 50 °F

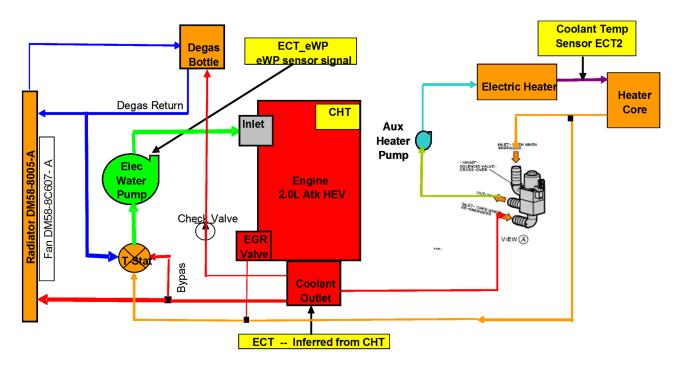
FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 103 OF 207

## **HEV/PHEV Cooling System Diagnostics**

The cooling system in the Plug-in Hybrid has been designed to include two functional cooling loops. This system is designed to maximize cooling efficiency when the vehicle is running on either the gas engine or the electric motor. The system operates in one of two different modes.

The first mode is the main or "combined" cooling loop mode which provides coolant flow through both the gas engine and the cabin heater core. While in this loop, both the gas engine and an electric heater can be used to maximize the heat transfer to the coolant thus providing both an increase in the engine metal temperature and heat for the vehicle cabin.

The second cooling mode is the "isolated" loop mode where coolant flow through the cabin heater core is isolated from the engine block. This loop is intended to provide cabin heat when the gas engine is not running. Coolant flow is maintained in the "combined" loop by default (isolation valve de-energized), and by energizing the isolation valve coolant flow is maintained in the "isolated" loop.



While in the "combined" cooling loop, coolant flow is maintained by a PCM-controlled Engine Coolant Pump (internally known as the electric Water Pump (eWP)). The Engine Coolant Pump is a pulse width modulated pump that can be used to control coolant flow rates independent of engine speed. This allows the PCM to maximize fuel economy by minimizing cooling system power consumption as compared to a traditional belt-driven water pump. Additionally, it can be used to improve engine metal temperature heating/cooling rates. Even though the Engine Coolant Pump can provide coolant flow while the engine is off, it's primary purpose is to provide coolant flow while the engine is running. A low power consumption auxiliary water pump in the "isolation" loop is the primary source of coolant flow for cabin heating when the vehicle is operating in electric mode.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 104 OF 207

The Engine Coolant Bypass Valve position determined whether the cooling system operates in a combined loop (engine-heated coolant flowing through the heater core) or in an isolated loop (engine is off, cabin heat provided by PTC heater). The ECBV is checked for circuit faults and for actual valve position after the valve is determined to be electrically failed.

Engine Coolant Bypass Valve Circuit check operation	
DTCs	P2682 – Engine Coolant Bypass Valve "A" Control Circuit Low
	P2683 - Engine Coolant Bypass Valve "A" Control Circuit High
	P26AB - Engine Coolant Bypass Valve "A" Stuck/Open (valve stuck in combined loop)
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None for P2682/P2683
	P2682 must set before P26AB will complete
Monitoring Conditions	
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to register a malfunction

## Typical Engine Coolant Bypass Valve Circuit malfunction thresholds:

P2682: Driver indicates circuit fault > 5 sec P2683: Driver indicated circuit fault > 5 sec

P26AB: ECT2 - ECT > 5 deg F within 60 seconds of circuit fault

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 105 OF 207

The Engine Coolant Pump (eWP) is a smart pump with four pins. Two of the pins are connected directly to battery power and electrical ground. The other circuits are connected to the PCM. One is connected to the LIN bus (primary PCM control) and the other is called the Emergency Run Input (ERI) line that can be used to control the pump with a PWM signal if the LIN bus goes down. This ERI line has been wired directly to ignition power so that the pump will be commanded to run any time the LIN bus is failed and ignition is on.

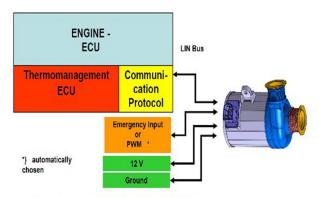


Figure 1: Electric water pump/motor assembly block diagram

Below is a summary of the diagnostics associated with the Engine Coolant Pump. Circuit faults for the LIN bus and ERI lines are detected by the PCM while the pump power and ground line faults are detected by the Engine Coolant Pump Control Module and communicated to the PCM through the LIN bus line. All mechanical faults are detected by the Engine Coolant Pump Control Module and also communicated to the PCM over the LIN bus.

The Engine Coolant Pump speed is controlled by the PCM and communicated to the Engine Coolant Pump Control Module over the LIN bus. A LIN bus communication fault (U019F) is set when the engine coolant pump speed echoed back from the Engine Coolant Pump Control Module doesn't match the desired speed sent from the PCM (requires no other electric water pump faults exist).

Engine Coolant Pump communication check operation	
DTCs	U019F - Lost Communication With Engine Coolant Pump Control Module
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	Over-temperature (P26D2), over-current (P26CB), blocked impeller (P26CB), or dry run (P26CE).
Monitoring Duration	10 seconds to register a malfunction

## Typical Engine Coolant Pump communication check malfunction thresholds:

Difference between desired pump speed and actual pump speed > 300 RPM

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 106 OF 207

Failures on the Emergency Run Input (ERI) line are detected by checking the status of the ERI line communicated to the PCM over LIN. Since the ERI line is hardwired to the vehicle ignition key, the returned ERI line state should always match the vehicle ignition state. When there is a mismatch, a DTC P26CA is set. This monitor requires that the LIN communications bus has not failed.

Engine Coolant Pump Emergency Run Input check operation	
DTCs	P26CA – Engine Coolant Pump Control Circuit/Open
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Monitoring Conditions	No LIN bus communication faults (U019F).
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to register a malfunction

#### Typical Engine Coolant Pump Emergency Run Input check malfunction thresholds:

Difference between ERI state reported by ECPCM and actual ERI state at PCM

The Engine Coolant Pump power and ground line status is not communicated to the PCM by Engine Coolant Pump Control Module. Therefore, the status of these lines is inferred by the PCM. If either of these lines is faulted, the Engine Coolant Pump will not run, and there will no LIN bus communications from the Engine Coolant Pump Control Module to the PCM. The PCM first checks to see if a fault on the communication line (U019F). If the communication line is faulted and the engine coolant temperature is increasing then it is assumed that the pump is not running and a P26D3 DTC is set. If the engine coolant temperature is not increasing then the PCM identifies the communications fault only.

Engine Coolant Pump Control Module Power/Ground check operation	
DTCs	P26D3 – Engine Coolant Pump Supply Voltage Circuit
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Monitoring Conditions	None
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to register a malfunction

#### **Electric Water Pump Control Module Power/Ground Signal Fault malfunction thresholds:**

LIN bus comm. fault (U019F) and accumulated engine coolant temp increase > 10°C

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 107 OF 207

The Engine Coolant Pump Control Module can use the rpm feedback and current feedback to detect mechanical faults for a blocked impeller and a "dry run" condition, i.e. loss of coolant. These conditions are communicated back to the PCM over the LIN bus.

Engine Coolant Pump Mechanical Faults check operation	
DTCs	P26CB – Engine Coolant Pump Performance/Stuck Off
	P26CE – Engine Coolant Pump Overspeed
Monitor execution	Continuous Operation
Monitor Sequence	None
Monitoring Conditions	No LIN bus communication faults (U019F).
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to register a malfunction

#### **Engine Coolant Pump Mechanical Faults check operation malfunction thresholds:**

P26CB: pump current too high, rpm too low for 4 restart events

P26CE: pump speed > 4909 rpm and current too low

The Engine Coolant Pump Control Module communicates the control module electronics voltage and temperature over the LIN bus to the PCM. The voltage is compared to the PCM system voltage to set DTCs P26D0 and P26D1. The temperature signal is checked for out-of-range high which sets a P26D2 DTC.

Engine Coolant Pump Control Module Electrical Faults check operation	
DTCs	P26D0 – Engine Coolant Pump Control Module System Voltage Low
	P26D1 – Engine Coolant Pump Control Module System Voltage High
	P26D2 - Engine Coolant Pump Control Module Over Temperature
Monitor execution	Continuous Operation
Monitor Sequence	None
Monitoring Conditions	No LIN bus communication faults (U019F).
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to register a malfunction

#### **E Engine Coolant Pump Control Module Electrical Faults malfunction thresholds:**

P26D0 – ECPCM voltage < (PCM battery voltage plus 4 volts)

P26D1 – ECPCM voltage > (PCM battery voltage plus 4 volts)

P26D2 – ECPCM temperature > 130°C

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 108 OF 207

The isolated cooling loop contains an Engine Coolant Temperature sensor (ECT2) located between the PTC auxiliary heater and the heater core. It is primarily used to measure the coolant temperature available to the heater core for cabin heating. The sensor is monitored for open/short circuit faults (P2184, P2185) as well as rationality (P2183) by monitoring the analog-to-digital (A/D) input voltage.

The ECT2 rationality diagnostic contains three separate tests:

- 1. ECT2 start-up correlation test:
  - After a long soak (360 min), the values of ECT2 and ECT are expected to be within a tolerance of each other (30 deg F). If not, the power-up test fails.
- 2. ECT2 continuous rationality test:
  - This test compares ECT2 to ECT under conditions where the coolant is circulated through both the heater core and engine coolant paths (i.e. the combined cooling loop, ECBV not energized). This test requires a minimum coolant flow rate (eWP speed above 2500 RPM) in the combined loop for a minimum time (90 seconds) to clear out any coolant temperature increase in ECT2 due to the PTC heater. The temperature difference (ECT2 ECT) is expected to be within a tolerance of each other (30 deg F). ECT2 is adjusted to compensate for the loss of coolant temperature at the ECT2 location due to the length of the coolant hose routing (7 deg F loss at ECT2 location but can be calibrated as a function of ambient temp.).
- 3. ECT2 In-range failure test:
  - The in-range test continuously monitors that the ECT2 temperature is within range. (-30 deg F to 275 deg F) Separate in-range thresholds can be calibrated when in the combined (ECBV not energized) versus isolated (ECBV energized) cooling loops.

Any of these three tests indicating a failure will cause a failure indication for DTC P2183. The no fault determination (DTC P2183 pass) requires the power-up test to pass as well as at least one of the other two tests to pass during the current OBD operating cycle.

Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 2 Circuit Check Operation:		
DTCs	P2184 – Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 2 Circuit Low	
	P2185 - Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 2 Circuit High	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	Not applicable	
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to obtain smart driver status	

Typical Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 2 Circuit malfunction thresholds:		
P2184: Driver indicates circuit fault => 5 sec		
P2185: Driver indicated circuit fault => 5 sec		

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 109 OF 207

Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 2 Rationality Check Operation:		
DTCs	P2183 - Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 2 Circuit Range/Performance	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	P2183 the power-up correlation test must pass prior to the other two tests	
Monitoring Conditions	No ECT2 circuit faults (P2184/P2185), no ECBV faults (P2682/P2683), no IAT faults (P0112/P0113)	
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to register a malfunction	

Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 2 Rationality Check Entry Conditions:		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Ambient Air Temperature	20 deg F	
Engine off (soak) time (for startup correlation test only)	360 min	
Engine Coolant Pump speed (continuous rationality only)	2500 RPM	
Time in combined cooling loop(continuous rationality only)	90 sec	
Battery Voltage	11.0 Volts	16.0 Volts

# Typical Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 2 Rationality Check malfunction thresholds:

ECT startup correlation test: |ECT - ECT2| <= 30 deg F

ECT2 continuous rationality test: |ECT - (ECT2 + 7 deg F)| <= 30 deg F

ECT2 In-range failure test: for combined loop or isolated loop: -30 deg F=> ECT2 <= 275 deg F

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 110 OF 207

#### **Cold Start Emission Reduction Component Monitor**

#### **Engine Speed and Spark Timing Component Monitor (2010 MY and beyond)**

#### **Entry Conditions and Monitor Flow**

The System Monitor and 2010 Component Monitor share the same entry conditions and monitor flow. During the first 15 seconds of a cold start, the monitor checks the entry conditions, counts time in idle, observes catalyst temperature, calculates the average difference between desired and actual engine speed, and calculates the average difference between desired and commanded spark.

If the expected change in catalyst temperature is large enough, the monitor then begins the waiting period, which lasts until 300 seconds after engine start. This 5-minute wait allows time to diagnose other components and systems that affect the validity of the test. During this waiting period, there are no constraints on drive cycle and the monitor cannot be disabled without turning off the key.

If the System monitor result falls below its threshold and all of the Component monitor results are below their respective thresholds, the monitor determines whether the idle time was sufficient. If so, it considers the tests a pass and the monitor is complete. If idle time was not sufficient, the monitor does not make a pass call and does not complete. This prevents tip-ins from resulting in false passes.

#### **Cold Start Engine Speed Monitor**

Once the waiting period is complete, the monitor compares the average difference between desired and actual engine speeds to a calibratable threshold that is a function of ECT at start. If the magnitude of the discrepancy exceeds the threshold, P050A is set.

#### **Cold Start Spark Timing Monitor**

Once the waiting period is complete, the monitor compares the average difference between desired and commanded spark to a calibratable threshold that is a function of ECT at start. If the magnitude of the discrepancy exceeds the threshold, P050B is set.

CSER COMPONENT MONITOR OPERATION		
Component Monitor DTCs P050A: Cold Start Idle Air Control System Performance		
	P050B: Cold Start Ignition Timing Performance	
Monitor Execution	Once per driving cycle, during a cold start	
Monitor Sequence	Monitor data collection takes place during first 15 seconds of cold start	
Sensors OK	No fault is present in any of the sensors or systems affecting the catalyst temperature model: Mass Air Flow (P0102, P0103), Throttle Position (P0122, P0123, P0222, P0223), Misfire (P0316, P0300-P0312), Injectors (P0201-P0212), Fuel System (P0171, P0172, P0174, P0175), Secondary Air (P0412, P2258), Crank Position Sensor (P0320), Ignition Coil (P0351-P0360), Intake Air Temp (P0112, P0113), Engine Coolant Temp/Cylinder Head Temp (P0117, P0118, P1289, P1290), Variable Cam Timing (P0010, P0020, P0011, P0012, P0021, P0022), Intake Manifold Runner Control (P2008).	
Monitoring Duration	Monitor completes 300 seconds after initial engine start	

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 111 OF 207

TYPICAL CSER COMPONENT MONITOR ENTRY AND COMPLETION CONDITIONS		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Barometric Pressure	22 in. Hg	
Engine Coolant Temperature at Start	35 °F	100 °F
Catalyst Temperature at Start	35 °F	125 °F
Fuel Level	15%	
BARO	22.5" Hg	
No Torque Reduction by Injector Cutout		
Power Takeout Not Active		
Completion condition	Minimum	Maximum
Length of Time Entry Conditions are Satisfied	11 sec.	
Expected Change in Catalyst Temperature	50 °F	
Time in Idle	10 sec.	
Selected Gear	Neutral	Drive

TYPICAL CSER COMPONENT MONITOR MALFUNCTION THRESHOLDS	
Engine speed discrepancy > 200 rpm	
Spark timing discrepancy > 10 deg.	

#### **Cold Start Variable Cam Timing Monitor (2008 MY and beyond)**

If the VCT cam phasing is used during a cold start to improved catalyst heating, the VCT system is checked functionally by monitoring the closed loop cam position error correction. If the proper cam position cannot be maintained and the system has an advance or retard error greater than the malfunction threshold, a cold start emission reduction (CSER) VCT control malfunction is indicated (P052A/P052B (Bank 1), P052C/P052D (Bank2). This test is the same test that was used previously for monitoring the VCT system under Comprehensive Component Monitoring requirements.

CSER VCT Target Error Check Operation:]		
DTCs	P052A - Cold start camshaft position timing over-advanced (Bank 1)	
	P052B - Cold start camshaft timing over-retarded (Bank 1)	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK		
Monitoring Duration	2 seconds	

Typical CSER VCT target error entry conditions:		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
VCT control enabled and commanded to advance or retard cam during CSER	n/a	n/a
Time since start of CSER cam phase monitoring		60 seconds

# Typical CSER VCT target error malfunction thresholds:

CSER Response/target error - VCT over-advance: 11 degrees

CSER Response/target error - VCT over-retard: 11 degrees

CSER Response/Stuck Pin - 10 degrees phasing commanded, and not seeing at least 2 degrees of movement.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 113 OF 207

#### **Cold Start Emission Reduction System Monitor**

The Cold Start Emission Reduction System Monitor is being introduced for the 2007 MY on vehicles that meet the LEV-II emission standards. The System Monitor detects the lack of catalyst warm up resulting from a failure to apply sufficient CSER during a cold start. It does this by using the inferred catalyst temperature model to determine how closely the actual catalyst temperature follows the expected catalyst temperature during a cold start. How closely the actual temperature follows the expected temperature is reflected in a ratio which is compared with a calibratable threshold.

#### **Temperatures Used**

The actual catalyst temperature is the same inferred catalyst temperature that is used by other portions of the engine control system, including the CSER control system. The inputs to this actual temperature are measured engine speed, measured air mass, and commanded spark.

The expected catalyst temperature is calculated using the same algorithm as the actual catalyst temperature, but the inputs are different. Desired engine speed replaces measured engine speed, desired air mass replaces measured air mass, and desired cold start spark replaces commanded spark. The resulting temperature represents the catalyst temperature that is expected if CSER is functioning properly.

#### **Ratio Calculation**

A ratio is calculated to reflect how closely the actual temperature has followed the expected temperature. This ratio is the difference between the two temperatures at a certain time-since-start divided by the increase in expected temperature over the same time period. The ratio, then, provides a measure of how much loss of catalyst heating occurred over that time period.

This ratio correlates to tailpipe emissions. Therefore applying a threshold to it allows illumination of the MIL at the appropriate emissions level. The threshold is a function of ECT at engine start.

#### **General CSER Monitor Operation**

During the first 15 seconds of a cold start, the monitor checks the entry conditions, counts time in idle, and observes catalyst temperature.

If the expected change in catalyst temperature is large enough, the monitor calculates the ratio as described above. Otherwise the monitor does not make a call.

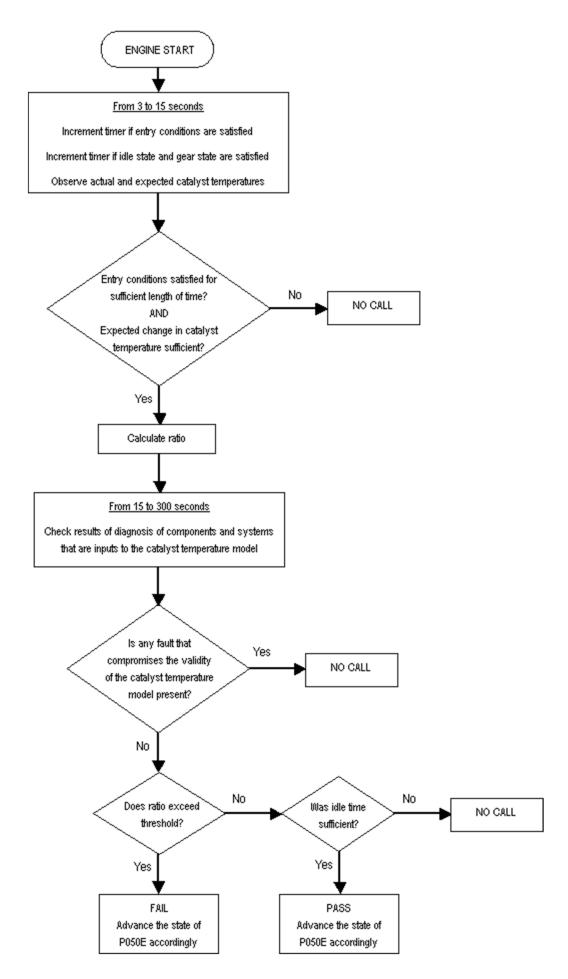
The monitor then begins the waiting period, which lasts from the time the ratio is calculated (15 seconds after engine start) until 300 seconds after engine start. This 5-minute wait allows time to diagnose other components and systems that affect the validity of the catalyst temperature model. During this waiting period, there are no constraints on drive cycle and the monitor cannot be disabled without turning off the key.

At the end of the waiting period, if no other faults that could compromise the validity of the catalyst temperature model are found, the monitor compares the ratio to the threshold.

If the ratio exceeds the threshold, the monitor considers the test a fail, and the monitor is complete.

If the ratio falls below the threshold, and all of the component monitor results are below their respective thresholds, the monitor determines whether the idle time was sufficient. If so, it considers the test a pass and the monitor is complete. If idle time was not sufficient, the monitor does not make a pass call and does not complete. This prevents tip-ins from resulting in false passes.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 114 OF 207



CSER SYSTEM MONITOR OPERATION		
DTC	P050E: Cold Start Engine Exhaust Temperature Too Low	
Monitor Execution	Once per driving cycle, during a cold start	
Monitor Sequence	Monitor data collection takes place during first 15 seconds of cold start	
Sensors OK	No fault is present in any of the sensors or systems affecting the catalyst temperature model: Mass Air Flow (P0102, P0103), Throttle Position (P0122, P0123, P0222, P0223), Misfire (P0316, P0300-P0312), Injectors (P0201-P0212), Fuel System (P0171, P0172, P0174, P0175), Secondary Air (P0412, P2258), Crank Position Sensor (P0320), Ignition Coil (P0351-P0360), Intake Air Temp (P0112, P0113), Engine Coolant Temp/Cylinder Head Temp (P0117, P0118, P1289, P1290), Variable Cam Timing (P0010, P0020, P0011, P0012, P0021, P0022), Intake Manifold Runner Control (P2008).	
Monitoring Duration	Monitor completes 300 seconds after initial engine start	

TYPICAL CSER SYSTEM MONITOR ENTRY AND COMPLETION CONDITIONS		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Barometric Pressure	22 in. Hg	
Engine Coolant Temperature at Start	35 °F	100 °F
Catalyst Temperature at Start	35 °F	125 °F
Fuel Level	15%	
No Torque Reduction by Injector Cutout		
Power Takeout Not Active		
Completion condition	Minimum	Maximum
Length of Time Entry Conditions are Satisfied		
Expected Change in Catalyst Temperature	50 °F	
Time in Idle	10 sec.	
Selected Gear	Neutral	Drive

# TYPICAL CSER SYSTEM MALFUNCTION THRESHOLD

Cold start warm-up temperature ratio > 0.2

#### **Variable Cam Timing System Monitor**

Variable Cam Timing (VCT) enables rotation of the camshaft(s) relative to the crankshaft (phase-shifting) as a function of engine operating conditions. There are four possible types of VCT with DOHC engines:

- Intake Only (phase-shifting only the intake cam);
- Exhaust Only (phase-shifting only the exhaust cam);
- Dual Equal (phase-shifting the intake and exhaust cams equally);
- Dual Independent (phase-shifting the intake and exhaust cams independently).

All four types of VCT are used primarily to increase internal residual dilution at part throttle to reduce NOx, and to improve fuel economy. This allows for elimination the external EGR system.

With Exhaust Only VCT, the exhaust camshaft is retarded at part throttle to delay exhaust valve closing for increased residual dilution and to delay exhaust valve opening for increased expansion work.

With Intake Only VCT, the intake camshaft is advanced at part throttle and WOT (at low to mid-range engine speeds) to open the intake valve earlier for increased residual dilution and close the intake valve earlier in the compression stroke for increased power. When the engine is cold, opening the intake valve earlier warms the charge which improves fuel vaporization for less HC emissions; when the engine is warm, the residual burned gasses limit peak combustion temperature to reduce NOx formation.

With Dual Equal VCT, both intake and exhaust camshafts are retarded from the default, fully advanced position to increase EGR residual and improve fuel economy by reducing intake vacuum pumping losses. The residual charge for NOx control is obtained by backflow through the late-closing exhaust valve as the piston begins its intake stroke.

The VCT system hardware consists of a control solenoid and a pulse ring on the camshaft. The PCM calculates relative cam position using the CMP input to process variable reluctance sensor pulses coming from the pulse ring mounted on the camshaft. Each pulse wheel has N+1 teeth where N=1 the number of cylinders per bank. The N=1 equally spaced teeth are used for cam phasing; the remaining tooth is used to determine cylinder # 1 position. Relative cam position is calculated by measuring the time between the rising edge of profile ignition pickup (PIP) and the falling edges of the VCT pulses.

The PCM continually calculates a cam position error value based on the difference between the desired and actual position and uses this information to calculate a commanded duty cycle for the VCT solenoid valve. When energized, engine oil is allowed to flow to the VCT unit thereby advancing and retarding cam timing. The variable cam timing unit assembly is coupled to the camshaft through a helical spline in the VCT unit chamber. When the flow of oil is shifted from one side of the chamber to the other, the differential change in oil pressure forces the piston to move linearly along the axis of the camshaft. This linear motion is translated into rotational camshaft motion through the helical spline coupling. A spring installed in the chamber is designed to hold the camshaft in the low-overlap position when oil pressure is too low (~15 psi) to maintain adequate position control. The camshaft is allowed to rotate up to 30 degrees.

Although the VCT system has been monitored under Comprehensive Component Monitoring requirements for many years, a new, emission-based VCT monitor is being introduced for the 2006 MY on vehicles that meet LEV-II emission standards. The intent of the new VCT monitoring requirements is to detect slow VCT system response that could cause emissions to increase greater than 1.5 \* std. in addition to detecting functional problems (target errors).

The new logic calculates the instantaneous variance in actual cam position (the squared difference between actual cam position and commanded cam position), then calculates the long term variance using a rolling average filter (Exponentially Weighted Moving Average). Continued, slow response from the VCT system will eventually accumulate large variances.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 117 OF 207

This same logic will also detect target errors that were detected by the previous CCM monitor. If the VCT system is stuck in one place, the monitor will detect a variance which will quickly accumulate.

There are three variance indices that monitor cam variance in the retard direction, the advance direction, and for V-engines, the difference between banks. If any variance index is greater than the malfunction threshold, a VCT slow response/target error malfunction will be indicated (P0011, P0012 Bank 1, 0021, P0022 Bank 2). Target errors will tend to generate only a single over-advanced or over-retarded code while slow response will tend to generate both codes.

In addition, logic has been added to determine whether the camshaft and crankshaft are misaligned by one or more teeth. This test calculates the absolute offset between one of the camshaft teeth and the crankshaft missing tooth at idle when that can is at its stop. If the error is greater than the malfunction threshold, a cam/crank misalignment error will be indicated (P0016 Bank 1, P0018 Bank 2).

For systems that phase the cams immediately off of a cold start for reducing emissions or CSER (Cold Start Emissions Reduction) the cam position is monitored for functionality during this period of time. There are two ways to set failures.

- Error between the actual position and the expected position is calculated. If the error is greater than a
  specified amount, and the Error persists for a period of time, a P052x code is set designating over advanced
  or retarded and the bank number. The diagnostic is only executed during CSER phasing.
- The diagnostic also checks for a cam position request above a threshold for a period of time, and determines
  that the VCT actuator pin is stuck if the cam does not move from the locked position by a certain amount.
  This is also only done during CSER operation. If the locking pin is determined to be stuck then the Oil
  Control Solenoid (OCS) is cycled on and off for a calibratable amount to allow pressure to build in the system
  to unseat the locking pin. If attempts to unstick the locking pin fail, then a P052x code is set.

The in-use performance ratio numerator for the VCT monitor can be incremented only if the VCT system has been monitored for both functional and response faults. If the vehicle is operated in a manner that does not ask the VCT actuators to change position, it may not be possible to evaluate whether they are working properly. As a result, the in-use ratio numerator checks to see if the commanded VCT position changes sufficiently to detect possible target errors and with a sufficiently high rate to detect possible slow response. For each drive cycle in which both criteria are met, the VCT in-use performance numerator will be incremented.

Similar to the previous CCM monitor, the VCT solenoid output driver in the PCM is checked electrically for opens and shorts (P0010 Bank 1, P0020 Bank 2).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 118 OF 207

VCT Monitor Operation:	
DTCs	P0010 - Camshaft Position Actuator Circuit (Bank 1)
	P0011 - Cam Position Actuator Over Advanced (Bank 1)
	P0012 - Cam Position Actuator Over Retarded (Bank 1)
	P0016 - Crank/Cam Position Correlation (Bank 1)
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	IAT, ECT, EOT, IMRC, TP, MAF, CKP, and CMP
Monitoring Duration	5 - 10 seconds for circuit faults and functional checks, 300 seconds for target error

Typical VCT response/functional monitor entry conditions:		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Engine RPM (for P0016/P0018 only)	850	4500
Engine Coolant Temperature	18 °F	
Engine Oil Temperature		280 °F
VCT control enabled and commanded to advance or retard cam **	n/a	n/a

<sup>\*\*</sup> VCT control of advance and retard by the engine is disabled in crank mode, when engine oil is cold (< 150 °F), while learning the cam/crank offset, while the control system is "cleaning" the solenoid oil passages, throttle actuator control in failure mode, and if one of the following sensor failures occur: IAT, ECT, EOT, MAF, TP, CKP, CMP, or IMRC.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 119 OF 207

#### Typical VCT monitor malfunction thresholds:

VCT solenoid circuit: Open/short fault set by the PCM driver

Cam/crank misalignment: > or = 7.5 crank degrees

Response/target error - VCT over-advance variance too high: 100 degrees squared

Response/target error - VCT over-retard variance too high: 400 degrees squared

#### **Typical In-Use Performance monitoring thresholds:**

Monitoring thresholds to increment the numerator:

Amount of cam change required for target error fault: > 160 degrees squared

Amount of rate of change required for slow response fault: > 5 degrees squared

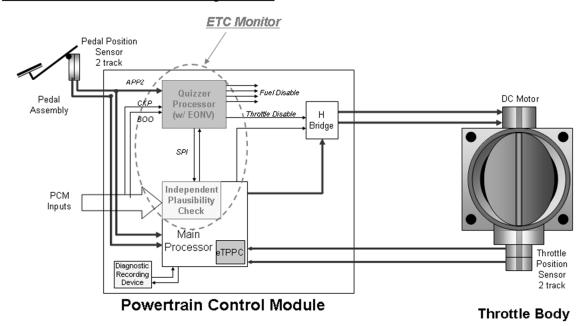
J1979 VCT Monitor Mode \$06 Data			
Monitor ID	Test ID	Description for CAN	Units
\$35	\$80	Camshaft Advanced Position Error Bank 1	Unsigned, Angular degrees
\$35	\$81	Camshaft Retarded Position Error Bank 1	Unsigned, Angular degrees

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 120 OF 207

#### **Electronic Throttle Control**

The Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) system uses a strategy that delivers engine or torque, based on driver demand, utilizing an electronically controlled throttle body. ETC strategy was developed mainly to improve fuel economy. This is possible by decoupling throttle angle (produces engine torque) from pedal position (driver demand). This allows the powertrain control strategy to optimize fuel control and transmission shift schedules while delivering the requested engine or wheel torque.

# Gen 3 / Gen 4 ETC System



Because safety is a major concern with ETC systems, a complex safety monitor strategy (hardware and software) was developed. The monitor system is distributed across two processors: the main powertrain control processor and a monitoring processor called a Quizzer processor.

The primary monitoring function is performed by the Independent Plausibility Check (IPC) software, which resides on the main processor. It is responsible for determining the driver-demanded torque and comparing it to an estimate of the actual torque delivered. If the generated torque exceeds driver demand by specified amount, the IPC takes appropriate mitigating action.

Since the IPC and main controls share the same processor, they are subject to a number of potential, common-failure modes. Therefore, the Quizzer processor was added to redundantly monitor selected PCM inputs and to act as an intelligent watchdog and monitor the performance of the IPC and the main processor. If it determines that the IPC function is impaired in any way, it takes appropriate Failure Mode and Effects Management (FMEM) actions.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 121 OF 207

ETC System Failure Mode and Effects Management:		
Effect	Failure Mode	
No Effect on Drivability	A loss of redundancy or loss of a non-critical input could result in a concern that does not affect driveability. The powertrain malfunction indicator (wrench) and the malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) do not illuminate, however the speed control may be disabled. A DTC is set to indicate the component or circuit with the concern.	
Delayed APP Sensor Response with Brake Override	This mode is caused by the loss of one APP sensor input due to sensor, wiring, or PCM concerns. The system is unable to verify the APP sensor input and driver demand. The throttle plate response to the APP sensor input is delayed as the accelerator pedal is applied. The engine returns to idle RPM whenever the brake pedal is applied. The powertrain malfunction indicator (wrench) illuminates, but the MIL does not illuminate in this mode. An APP sensor related DTC is set.	
LOS Supercreep	Loss of both APP sensor inputs due to sensor, wiring, or PCM concerns, or internal control mode torque performance, or generator speed or crankshaft position (CKP) sensor or harness. There is no response when the accelerator pedal is applied. The engine returns to idle RPM and driver demanded torque returns to zero whenever the brake pedal is applied. The powertrain malfunction indicator (wrench) illuminates, but the MIL does not illuminate in this mode. An internal control module torque performance or internal control module drive motor/generator/engine speed sensor or APP sensor DTC is set	
LOS Supercreep	Creep mode is caused by the loss of one brake pedal position (BPP) and one APP sensor input. The system is unable to determine driver demand. There is no response when the accelerator pedal is applied. The powertrain malfunction indicator (wrench) illuminates, but the MIL does not illuminate in this mode. An APP and BPP sensor, or harness related DTC is set.	
RPM Guard with Pedal Follower	In this mode, the throttle plate control is disabled due to the loss of both TP sensor inputs, loss of throttle plate control, stuck throttle plate, significant processor concerns, or other major electronic throttle body concern. The spring returns the throttle plate to the default (limp home) position. A maximum allowed RPM is determined based on the position of the accelerator pedal (RPM Guard). If the actual RPM exceeds this limit, spark and fuel are used to bring the RPM below the limit. The powertrain malfunction indicator (wrench) and the MIL illuminate in this mode and a DTC for an ETC related component is set. EGR and VCT outputs are set to default values and speed control is disabled.	
Shutdown	If a significant processor concern is detected, the monitor forces the vehicle to shutdown by disabling engine, generator and traction motor. The powertrain malfunction indicator (wrench), MIL, and hazard indicator may illuminate.	

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 122 OF 207

# **Transmission Range Sensor Inputs**

Transmission Range Sens	or Check Operation:
DTCs	P2800 – Transmission Range Sensor B Circuit (PRNDL input) (wrench light, non-MIL)
	P2801 – Transmission Range Sensor B Circuit Range/Performance (wrench light, non-MIL)
	P2802 - Transmission Range Sensor B Circuit Low (wrench light, non-MIL)
	P2803 - Transmission Range Sensor B Circuit High (wrench light, non-MIL)
	P2806 - Transmission Range Sensor Alignment (wrench light, non-MIL)
Monitor execution	continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	not applicable
Monitoring Duration	< 1 seconds to register a malfunction

Transmission range sensor check malfunction thresholds:					
TR Sensor	Park	Reverse	Neutral	Drive	Low
TR_A1 (VOLTS	3.84 - 4.77	2.58 - 3.31	1.82 - 2.56	0.97 - 1.79	0.20 - 0.92
TR_A2 (VOLTS	0.20 - 1.08	1.56 - 2.25	2.26 - 2.96	2.97 - 3.74	3.77 - 4.45

Range/performance – disagreement between sensors > 3.85 degrees

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 123 OF 207

#### **Accelerator and Throttle Position Sensor Inputs**

On-demand KOEO / KOER Sensor Check Operation:	
DTCs	P1575 – APP out of self-test range (non-MIL)
Monitor execution	On-demand
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	not applicable
Monitoring Duration	< 1 seconds to register a malfunction

Accelerator Pedal Position Sensor Check Operation:		
DTCs	P2122, P2123 – APP D circuit continuity (wrench light, non-MIL)	
	P2127, P2128 - APP E circuit continuity (wrench light, non-MIL)	
	P2138 – APP D/E circuit disagreement (wrench light, non-MIL)	
Monitor execution	continuous	
Monitor Sequence	none	
Sensors OK	not applicable	
Monitoring Duration	< 1 seconds to register a malfunction	

# APP sensor check malfunction thresholds:

Circuit continuity - Voltage < 0.25 volts or voltage > 4.75 volts

Range/performance – disagreement between sensors > 1.1 degrees

Brake Switch Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0504 – Brake switch A/B correlation (wrench light, non-MIL)	
	P0572 – Brake switch circuit low (wrench light, non-MIL)	
	P0573 – Brake switch circuit high (wrench light, non-MIL)	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	not applicable	
Monitoring Duration	> 25 brake application cycles to register a malfunction	

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 124 OF 207

Throttle Position Sensor Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0122, P0123 – TP A circuit continuity (MIL, wrench light)
	P0222, P0223 – TP B circuit continuity (MIL, wrench light)
	P2135 – TP A / TP B correlation (non-MIL, wrench light)
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	not applicable
Monitoring Duration	< 1 seconds to register a malfunction

# TP sensor check malfunction thresholds:

Circuit continuity - Voltage < 0.25 volts or voltage > 4.75 volts

Correlation and range/performance – disagreement between sensors > 7 degrees

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 125 OF 207

#### **Electronic Throttle Monitor**

Electronic Throttle M	onitor Operation:
DTCs	U0300 – ETC software version mismatch, IPC or Quizzer (MIL, Hazard, wrench light for Gen3 / Gen4)
	P0600 - Serial Communication Link (MIL, Hazard, wrench light for Gen3 / Gen4)
	P060A – Internal control module monitoring processor performance (MIL, Hazard, wrench light for Gen3 / Gen4)
	P060B – Internal control module A/D processing performance (MIL, Hazard, wrench light)
	P060C – Internal control module main processor performance (MIL, Hazard, wrench light)
	P060D – Internal control module accelerator pedal performance (non-MIL) [Gen3 / Gen4 only]
	P061A – Internal control module Torque Performance (MIL, wrench light)
	P0A18 – Motor Torque Sensor Circuit Range/Performance (MIL, Hazard, wrench light)
	P0A23 – Generator Torque Sensor Circuit Range/Performance (MIL, Hazard, wrench light)
	P0C2F – Internal Control Module Drive Motor/Generator/Engine Speed Performance (MIL, wrench light)
	P1A0D – Hybrid Powertrain Control Module – Generator Disabled (MIL, Hazard, wrench light)
	P1A0E - Hybrid Powertrain Control Module – Motor Disabled (MIL, Hazard, wrench light)
	P061F – Internal control module throttle actuator controller performance (non-MIL, wrench light for Gen3 / Gen4)
	P1674 – Internal control module software corrupted (MIL, hazard, wrench light for Gen3 / Gen4)
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	not applicable
Monitoring Duration	< 1 seconds to register a malfunction

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 126 OF 207

#### **Throttle Plate Position Controller (TPPC) Outputs**

The purpose of the TPPC is to control the throttle position to the desired throttle angle. The current ETC systems have the eTPPC function integrated in the main PCM processor.

The desired angle is relative to the hard-stop angle. The hard-stop angle is learned during each key-up process before the main CPU requests the throttle plate to be closed against the hard-stop. The output of the (e)TPPC is a voltage request to the H-driver (also in PCM). The H driver is capable of positive or negative voltage to the Electronic Throttle Body Motor.

Throttle Plate Controller and Actuator Operation:		
DTCs	P2107 – processor test (MIL, wrench light)	
	P2111 – throttle actuator system stuck open (MIL, wrench light)	
	P2112 – throttle actuator system stuck closed (MIL, wrench light)	
	P2101 – throttle actuator range/performance test (MIL, wrench light)	
	P115E – throttle actuator airflow trim at max limit (non-MIL)	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Monitoring Duration	< 5 seconds to register a malfunction	

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 127 OF 207

# **Comprehensive Component Monitor - Engine**

#### **Engine Temperature Sensor Inputs**

Analog inputs such as Intake Air Temperature (P0112, P0113), Cylinder Head Temperature (P1289. P1290), Mass Air Flow (P0102, P0103) and Throttle Position (P0122, P0123) are checked for opens, shorts, or rationality by monitoring the analog -to-digital (A/D) input voltage.

The ECT rationality test checks to make sure that ECT is not stuck high in a range that causes other OBD to be disabled. If after a long (6 hour) soak, ECT is very high (> 230 °F) and is also much higher than IAT at start, it is assumed that ECT is stuck high. If after a long (6 hour) soak, ECT is stuck midrange between 175 °F (typical thermostat monitor threshold temperature) and 230 °F and is also much higher than IAT at start, it is assumed that ECT is stuck mid-range.

ECT Sensor Rationality Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0116 (ECT stuck high or midrange)	
Monitor execution	Once per driving cycle	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	ECT, CHT, IAT	
Monitoring Duration	100 seconds to register a malfunction	

Typical ECT Sensor Rationality check entry conditions:		
Entry Condition	Minimum	Maximum
Engine-off time (soak time)	360 min	
Difference between ECT and IAT		50 deg
Engine Coolant Temperature	230 °F	
Engine Coolant Temperature for stuck midrange condition	160 °F	230 °F

#### Typical ECT Sensor Rationality check malfunction thresholds:

Catalyst, Misfire, Fuel System or HO2S Monitors have not run this drive cycle

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 128 OF 207

The CHT sensor measures cylinder head metal temperature as opposed to engine coolant temperature. At lower temperatures, CHT temperature is equivalent to ECT temperature. At higher temperatures, ECT reaches a maximum temperature (dictated by coolant composition and pressure) whereas CHT continues to indicate cylinder head metal temperature. If there is a loss of coolant or air in the cooling system, the CHT sensor will still provides an accurate measure of cylinder head metal temperature. If a vehicle uses a CHT sensor, the PCM software calculates both CHT and ECT values for use by the PCM control and OBD systems.

Cylinder Head Temperature Sensor Check Operation:		
DTCs	P1289 (high input), P1290 (low input), P1299 (fail-safe cooling activated)	
Monitor execution	continuous	
Monitor Sequence	none	
Sensors OK	not applicable	
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to register a malfunction	

# Typical CHT sensor check malfunction thresholds:

Voltage < 0.41 volts or voltage > 4.95 volts

For P1299, MIL illuminates immediately if CHT > 270  $^{\circ}$  Fuel shut-off is activated to reduce engine and coolant temperature

Intake Air Temperature Sensor Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0112 (low input), P0113 (high input)	
Monitor execution	continuous	
Monitor Sequence	none	
Sensors OK	not applicable	
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to register a malfunction	

# Typical IAT sensor check malfunction thresholds: Voltage < 0.20 volts or voltage > 4.93 volts

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 129 OF 207

ECT, IAT, EOT Temperature Sensor Transfer Function			
Volts	A/D counts in PCM	Temperature, degrees F	
4.89	1001	-40	
4.86	994	-31	
4.81	983	-22	
4.74	970	-13	
4.66	954	-4	
4.56	934	5	
4.45	910	14	
4.30	880	23	
4.14	846	32	
3.95	807	41	
3.73	764	50	
3.50	717	59	
3.26	666	68	
3.00	614	77	
2.74	561	86	
2.48	508	95	
2.23	456	104	
1.99	407	113	
1.77	361	122	
1.56	319	131	
1.37	280	140	
1.20	246	149	
1.05	215	158	
0.92	188	167	
0.80	165	176	
0.70	144	185	
0.61	126	194	
0.54	110	203	
0.47	96	212	
0.41	85	221	
0.36	74	230	
0.32	65	239	
0.28	57	248	
0.25	51	257	
0.22	45	266	
0.19	40	275	
0.17	35	284	
0.15	31	293	
0.14	28	302	

#### **IAT Rationality Test**

The IAT rationality test determines if the IAT sensor is producing an erroneous temperature indication within the normal range of IAT sensor input.

The IAT sensor rationality test is run only once per power-up. The IAT sensor input is compared to the CHT sensor input (ECT sensor input on some applications) at key-on after a long (6 hour) soak. If the IAT sensor input and the CHT (ECT) sensor input agree within a tolerance (+/- 30 deg F), no malfunction is indicated and the test is complete. If the IAT sensor input and the CHT (ECT) sensor input differ by more than the tolerance, the vehicle must be driven over maximum electric vehicle speed for 5 minutes to confirm the fault. This is intended to address noise factors like sun load that can cause the IAT sensor to indicate a much higher temperature than the CHT (ECT) sensor after a long soak. Driving the vehicle attempts to bring the IAT sensor reading within the test tolerance. If the IAT sensor input remains outside of the tolerance after the vehicle drive conditions have been met, the test indicates a malfunction and the test is complete.

In addition to the start-up rationality check, an IAT "Out of Range" check is also performed. The test continuously, checks to see if IAT is greater than the "IAT Out of Range High threshold", approximately 150 deg F. In order to prevent setting false DTC during extreme ambient or vehicle soak conditions, the same count up/count down timer used for the IAT startup rationality test is used to validate the fault. If IAT is greater than 150 deg F and vehicle speed is greater than ~ 40 mph for 250 seconds then set a P0111.

Either the IAT startup rationality test or the IAT Out of Range High test can set a P0111 DTC. The logic is designed so that either fault can trigger a P0111, however, both faults must be OK before the P0111 DTC is cleared.

Block heater detection results in a no-call.

Intake Air Temperature Sensor Range/Performance Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0111 (range/performance)	
Monitor execution	Once per driving cycle, at start-up	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	ECT/CHT, IAT, VSS	
Monitoring Duration	Immediate or up to 30 minutes to register a malfunction	

Typical Intake Air Temperature Sensor Range/Performance Entry Conditions		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Air Mass	1.2 lbm/min	
Engine off (soak) time	6 hours	
Battery Voltage	11.0 Volts	
Time since engine start (if driving req'd)		30 min
Vehicle speed (if driving req'd)	35 mph	
Time above minimum vehicle speed (if driving req'd)	5 min	
IAT - ECT at start (block heater inferred)	-30 °F	-90 °F

Typical IAT sensor check malfunction thresholds:
IAT and ECT/CHT error at start-up > +/-30 deg F

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 131 OF 207

Intake Air Temperature Sensor Out of Range High Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0111 (Out of Range High)	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	ECT/CHT, IAT, VSS	
Monitoring Duration	250 seconds to register a malfunction	

Typical Intake Air Temperature Sensor Out of Range high Entry Conditions		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Engine off (soak) time	6 hours	
Battery Voltage	11.0 Volts	
Vehicle speed	35 mph	
Time above minimum vehicle speed (if driving req'd)	5 min	

Typical IAT Sensor Out of Range High check malfunction thresholds:
IAT > 150 deg F

#### **AAT Rationality Test**

The AAT rationality test determines if the AAT sensor is producing an erroneous temperature indication within the normal range of AAT sensor input.

The AAT sensor rationality test is run only once per power-up. The IAT sensor input is compared to the CHT sensor input (ECT sensor input on some applications) and the IAT sensor at key-on after a long (6 hour) soak. If the AAT sensor input, the CHT (ECT) sensor input and the IAT sensor input agree within a tolerance (+/- 30 deg F), no malfunction is indicated and the test is complete. If the AAT sensor input, the CHT (ECT) sensor input and IAT sensor input differ by more than the tolerance, the vehicle must be driven over 25 mph for 300 seconds to confirm the fault. This is intended to address noise factors like sun load that can cause the AAT sensor to indicate a higher temperature than the CHT (ECT) or IAT sensor after a long soak. Driving the vehicle attempts to bring the AAT sensor reading within the test tolerance. If the AAT sensor input remains outside of the tolerance after the vehicle drive conditions have been met, the test indicates a malfunction and the test is complete.

In addition to the start-up rationality check, an AAT "Out of Range" check is also performed. The test continuously, checks to see if AAT is greater than the "AAT Out of Range High threshold", approximately 150 deg F. In order to prevent setting false DTC during extreme ambient or vehicle soak conditions, the same count up/count down timer used for the IAT startup rationality test is used to validate the fault. If IAT is greater than 150 deg F and vehicle speed is greater than ~ 10 mph for 300 seconds then set a P0071.

Either the IAT startup rationality test or the IAT Out of Range High test can set a P0111 DTC. The logic is designed so that either fault can trigger a "two-in-a-row" P0111 MIL, however, both faults must be OK before the P0111 DTC is cleared.

Block heater detection results in a no-call.

Ambient Air Temperature Sensor Range/Performance Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0071 - AAT Sensor Range/Performance	
Monitor execution	Once per driving cycle, at start-up	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	ECT/CHT, IAT, VSS, P2610	
Monitoring Duration	Immediate or up to 5 minutes to register a malfunction	

Typical Ambient Air Temperature Sensor Range/Performance Entry Conditions		
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum
Engine off (soak) time	6 hours	
Battery Voltage	11.0 Volts	
Time since engine start (if driving req'd)		30 min
Vehicle speed (if driving req'd)	25 mph	
Time above minimum vehicle speed (if driving req'd)	5 min	
IAT - ECT at start (block heater inferred)	-30 °F	-90 °F

Typical AAT sensor check malfunction thresholds:	
AAT and IAT and ECT/CHT error at start-up > +/-30 deg F	

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 133 OF 207

Ambient Air Temperature Sensor Out of Range High Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0071 (Out of Range High)
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	ECT/CHT, IAT, VSS, P2610
Monitoring Duration	300 seconds to register a malfunction

Typical Ambient Air Temperature Sensor Out of Range high Entry Conditions			
Entry condition	Minimum	Maximum	
Engine off (soak) time	6 hours		
Battery Voltage	11.0 Volts		
Load		200%	
Vehicle speed	10 mph		
Time above minimum vehicle speed (if driving req'd)	5 min		

Typical AAT Sensor Out of Range High check malfunction thresholds:	
IAT > 150 deg F	

#### **Throttle Position Sensor**

Throttle Position Sensor Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0122 (low input), P0123 (high input)
Monitor execution	continuous
Monitor Sequence	none
Sensors OK	not applicable
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to register a malfunction

Typical TP sensor of	hec	k malfunction thresholds:
Voltage < 0.20 volts	or	voltage > 4.80 volts

#### **Mass Air Flow Sensor**

MAF Sensor Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0102 (low input), P0103 (high input)
Monitor execution	continuous
Monitor Sequence	none
Sensors OK	not applicable
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to register a malfunction

# Typical MAF sensor check malfunction thresholds:

Voltage < 0.244 volts and engine running or voltage > 4.785 volts engine rpm < 4,000 rpm

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 135 OF 207

# **MAF/TP Rationality Test**

The MAF and TP sensors are cross-checked by the ECM to determine whether the sensor readings are rational and appropriate for the current operating conditions. (P1A0C)

MAF/TP Rationality Check Operation:	
DTCs	P1A0C – Engine Failed to Start
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds within test entry conditions

Typical MAF/TP rationality check entry conditions:		
Entry Condition	Minimum	Maximum
Engine RPM	1025 rpm	minimum of 3800 rpm
Engine Coolant Temp	40 °F	

Typical MAF/TP rationality check ma	alfunction thresholds:
Load > 55% and TP < 0.288 volts or	Load < 20% and TP > 1.953 volts

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 136 OF 207

5 Volt Sensor Reference Voltage Check:	
DTCs	P0642 (low input), P0643 (high input)
Monitor execution	continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	not applicable
Monitoring Duration	5 seconds to register a malfunction

Typical sensor check malfunction thresholds:
Voltage < 4.5 volts or voltage > 5.5 volts

#### **Miscellaneous CPU Tests**

Loss of Keep Alive Memory (KAM) power (a separate wire feeding the PCM) results is a P1633 DTC and immediate MIL illumination on most applications.

Vehicles that require tire/axle information and VIN to be programmed into the PCM Vehicle ID block (VID) will store a P1639 if the VID block is not programmed or corrupted.

Additional DTCs will be stored to indicate various internal PCM hardware malfunctions:

P0602 - Powertrain Control Module Programming Error indicates that the Vehicle ID block check sum test failed.

P0603 - Powertrain Control Module Keep Alive Memory (KAM) Error indicates the Keep Alive Memory check sum test failed.

P0604 - Powertrain Control Module Random Access Memory (RAM) Error indicates the Random Access Memory read/write test failed.

P0605 - Powertrain Control Module Read Only Memory (ROM) Error indicates a Read Only Memory check sum test failed.

P0607 - Powertrain Control Module Performance indicates incorrect CPU instruction set operation, or excessive CPU resets.

P068A - ECM/PCM Power Relay De-energized - Too Early. This fault indicates that NVRAM write did not complete successfully after the ignition key was turned off, prior to PCM shutdown.

P06B8 - Internal Control Module Non-Volatile Random Access Memory (NVRAM) Error indicates Permanent DTC check sum test failed

The PCM "engine off" or "soak" timer is tested to ensure that it is functional. The value of engine coolant temperature decays after the engine is turned off. This decay is modeled as a function of ECT, IAT and soak time. If, during a cold start, (difference between ECT and IAT is low), the actual ECT at start is much lower than the predicted ECT at start, it means that the soak timer is not functioning and a P2610 DTC is stored. (If the timer fails, it will read zero seconds and the model will predict that ECT will be the same temperature as when the engine was last turned off.)

U0101 - Lost Communication With TCM

5 Volt Sensor Reference Voltage A Check:		
DTCs	P0642 (low input)	
P0643 (high input)		
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	ce None	
Sensors OK not applicable		
Monitoring Duration	5 sec to register a malfunction	

Typical 5 Volt Sensor Reference Voltage A & B check entry conditions:				
Entry Condition Minimum Maximum				
Ignition "ON"	NA	NA		

# Typical 5 Volt Sensor Reference Voltage A & B check malfunction thresholds:

P0642

Short to ground (signal voltage): < 4.75 V

P0643

Short to battery plus (signal voltage): > 5.25 V

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 138 OF 207

#### **Ignition**

New floating point processors no longer use an EDIS chip for ignition signal processing. The crank and cam position signals are now directly processed by the PCM/ECM microprocessor using a special interface chip called a Time Processing Unit or TPU. The 36-tooth crankshaft and camshaft position signals come directly into the TPU. The signals to fire the ignition coil drivers also come from the TPU.

The ignition system is checked by monitoring three ignition signals during normal vehicle operation:

CKP, the signal from the crankshaft 60-2-tooth wheel. The missing teeth are used to locate the cylinder pair associated with cylinder # 1 The TPU also generates the Profile Ignition Pickup (PIP) signal, a 50% duty cycle, square wave signal that has a rising edge at 10 deg BTDC.

Camshaft Position (CMP), a signal derived from the camshaft to identify the #1 cylinder

First, several relationships are checked on the 60-2 tooth CKP signal. The TPU looks for the proper number of teeth (58) after the missing teeth are recognized; time between teeth too low (< 30 rpm or > 9,000 rpm); or the missing teeth were not where it was expected to be. If an error occurs, the TPU shuts off fuel and the ignition coils and attempts to resynchronize itself. It takes on revolution to verify the missing tooth, and another revolution to verify cylinder #1 using the CMP input. Note that if a P0320 DTC is set on a vehicle with Electronic Throttle Control, (ETC), the ETC software will also set a P2106.

If the proper ratio of CMP events to PIP events is not being maintained (for example, 1 CMP edge for every 8 PIP edges for an 8-cylinder engine), it indicates a missing or noisy CMP signal (P0340). On applications with Variable Cam Timing (VCT), the CMP wheel has five teeth to provide the VCT system with more accurate camshaft control. The TPU checks the CMP signal for an intermittent signal. If an intermittent is detected, the VCT system is disabled and a P0344 (CMP Intermittent Bank 1) or P0349 (CMP intermittent Bank 2) is set.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 139 OF 207

CKP Ignition System Check Operation:			
DTCs	P0320 - Ignition Engine Speed Input Circuit		
Monitor execution	continuous		
Monitor Sequence	none		
Sensors OK			
Monitoring Duration	< 5 seconds		

Typical CKP ignition check entry conditions:		
Entry Condition	Minimum	Maximum
Engine RPM for CKP	200 rpm	

# Typical CKP ignition check malfunction thresholds:

Incorrect number of teeth after the missing tooth is recognized,

Time between teeth too low (< 30 rpm or > 9,000 rpm)

Missing tooth was not where it was expected to be.

CMP Ignition System Check Operation:			
DTCs	P0340 - Intake Cam Position Circuit, Bank 1		
Monitor execution	continuous		
Monitor Sequence	none		
Sensors OK			
Monitoring Duration	< 5 seconds		

Typical CMP ignition check entry conditions:		
Entry Condition	Minimum	Maximum
Engine RPM for CMP	200 rpm	

# Typical CMP ignition check malfunction thresholds:

Ratio of PIP events to CMP events: 4:1, 6:1, 8:1 or 10:1 based on engine cyl

Coil Primary Ignition System Check Operation:		
DTCs P0351 – P0354 (Coil primary)		
Monitor execution	cution Continuous	
Monitor Sequence None		
Sensors OK		
Monitoring Duration < 5 seconds		

Typical Coil primary ignition check entry conditions:		
Entry Condition	Minimum	Maximum
Engine RPM for coil primary	200 rpm	Minimum of 3200 rpm
Positive engine torque	Positive torque	
Battery Voltage	11 volts	16 volts

# Typical Coil primary ignition check malfunction thresholds:

Ratio of PIP events to IDM or NOMI events 1:1

#### **Engine Outputs**

The PCM will monitor the "smart" driver fault status bit that indicates either an open circuit, short to power or short to ground.

Injector Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0201 through P0204 (opens/shorts)
Monitor execution	Continuous within entry conditions
Monitor Sequence	None
Monitoring Duration	10 seconds

Typical injector circuit check entry conditions:		
Entry Condition	Minimum	Maximum
Battery Voltage	11.0 volts	
Engine Coolant Temp		240 °F
Intake Air Temp		150 °F

The Idle Air Control is functionally checked by monitoring the closed loop idle speed correction required to maintain the desired idle rpm. If the proper idle rpm cannot be maintained and the system has a high rpm (+100) or low rpm error (-200) greater than the malfunction threshold, an IAC malfunction is indicated. (P0507, P0506)

IAC Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0507 (functional - overspeed)	
	P0506 (functional - underspeed)	
Monitor execution	once per driving cycle	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK		
Monitoring Duration	15 seconds	

Typical IAC functional check entry conditions:		
Entry Condition	Minimum	Maximum
Engine Coolant Temp	130 °F	
Time since engine start-up	100 seconds	
Closed loop fuel	Yes	
Throttle Position (at idle, closed throttle, no dashpot)	Closed	Closed

# Typical IAC functional check malfunction thresholds:

For underspeed error: Actual rpm 100 rpm below target, closed-loop IAC correction > 1 lb/min For overspeed error: Actual rpm 200 rpm above target, closed-loop IAC correction < .2 lb/min

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 142 OF 207

#### Mechanical Returnless Fuel System (MRFS) — Dual Speed

The FP signal is a duty cycle command sent from the PCM to the fuel pump control module. The fuel pump control module uses the FP command to operate the fuel pump at the speed requested by the PCM or to turn the fuel pump off. A valid duty cycle to command the fuel pump on, is in the range of 15-47%. The fuel pump control module doubles the received duty cycle and provides this voltage to the fuel pump as a percent of the battery voltage. When the ignition is turned on, the fuel pump runs for about 1 second and is requested off by the PCM if engine rotation is not detected.

#### FUEL PUMP DUTY CYCLE OUTPUT FROM PCM

FP Duty Cycle Command	PCM Status	Fuel Pump Control Module Actions
0-15%	Invalid off duty cycle	The fuel pump control module sends a 20% duty cycle signal on the fuel pump monitor (FPM) circuit. The fuel pump is off.
37%	Normal low speed operation.	The fuel pump control module operates the fuel pump at the speed requested. The fuel pump control module sends a 60% duty cycle signal on FPM circuit.
47%	Normal high speed operation.	The fuel pump control module operates the fuel pump at the speed requested. The fuel pump control module sends a 60% duty cycle signal on FPM circuit.
51-67%	Invalid on duty cycle.	The fuel pump control module sends a 20% duty cycle signal on the FPM circuit. The fuel pump is off.
67-83%	Valid off duty cycle	The fuel pump control module sends a 60% duty cycle signal on FPM circuit. The fuel pump is off.
83-100%	Invalid on duty cycle.	The fuel pump control module sends a 20% duty cycle signal on the FPM circuit. The fuel pump is off.

The fuel pump control module communicates diagnostic information to the PCM through the FPM circuit. This information is sent by the fuel pump control module as a duty cycle signal. The 4 duty cycle signals that may be sent are listed in the following table.

#### FUEL PUMP CONTROL MODULE DUTY CYCLE SIGNALS

<b>Duty Cycle</b>	Comments
20%	This duty cycle indicates the fuel pump control module is receiving an invalid duty cycle from the PCM.
40%	For vehicles with event notification signal, this duty cycle indicates the fuel pump control module is receiving an invalid event notification signal from the RCM. For vehicles without event notification signal, this duty cycle indicates the fuel pump control module is functioning normally.
60%	For vehicles with event notification signal, this duty cycle indicates the fuel pump control module is functioning normally.
80%	This duty cycle indicates the fuel pump control module is detecting a concern with the secondary circuits.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 143 OF 207

MRFS Check Operation:	
DTCs	P025A – Fuel Pump Control Circuit (opens/shorts)
	P025B – Invalid Fuel Pump Control Data (20% duty cycle from FPM)
	P0627 – Fuel Pump Secondary Circuit (80% duty cycle from PFM)
	U2010B – Fuel Pump Disabled Circuit (40% duty cycle from FPM)
	U0109 – Loss of Communication with Fuel Pump Module
Monitor execution	once per driving cycle
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	2 seconds

Typical MRFS check entry conditions:				
Entry Condition	Minimum	Maximum		
Battery Voltage	11 volts			

# **Typical MRFS check malfunction thresholds:**

P025A

FP output driver indicates fault

P025B, P0627, U210B

Fuel Pump Monitor duty cycle feedback of 20, 40 or 80%

U0191

No Fuel Pump Monitor duty cycle feedback

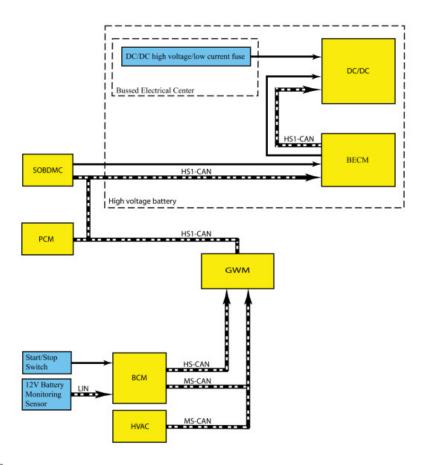
# **Battery and Battery Charging Systems**

## **Low Voltage Battery Charging System - Overview**

The 12V battery is charged by the Direct Current/Direct Current (DC/DC) converter control module. It is enabled when the high voltage battery contactors have closed, providing high-voltage power to the DC/DC converter control module.

The Battery Monitoring Sensor continuously monitors the battery state of charge condition and provides the BCM with this information. The BCM communicates this information to the PCM over the High Speed CAN network (HS-CAN). The PCM communicates the battery desired set point to the DC/DC converter control module which supplies the necessary charge voltage to the 12V battery. The Battery Monitoring Sensor also estimates losses in the battery capacity over time. The Battery Monitoring Sensor should only be reset when the battery is replaced.

The Battery Monitoring Sensor is clamped directly to the negative terminal of the battery and grounds to the vehicle at the chassis ground connection point through the negative battery cable and eyelet. It is part of the negative battery cable and cannot be serviced separately.



E155478

The PCM monitors the low voltage battery for charging performance.

Low Voltage Battery Check Operation:	
DTCs	P057F - Battery State of Charge Performance.
Monitor execution	During vehicle / engine off while on plug-in charge
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	

## Low Voltage Battery check malfunction thresholds:

Low Voltage Battery current / time > 6 amps / 60 min

Low Voltage Battery temperature gradient too high, gradient counter > 3

Low Voltage Battery temperature.> 140 deg F

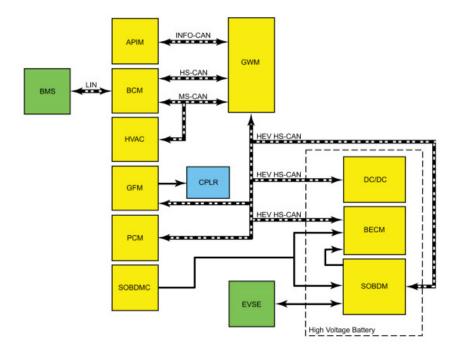
#### **High Voltage Battery Charging System - Overview**

The high voltage battery charging system is responsible for charging the high voltage battery while the vehicle is not operating. It consists of an Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment (EVSE), Secondary OBD Module (also known as the Battery Changer Control Module and Charge Port Light Ring (CPLR).

The EVSE is an external AC charger that connects to an external voltage source and the vehicle charge port when the vehicle is not operating to charge the high voltage battery. The 110V (AC Level 1) charger and cord set plugs into a standard 110V AC outlet and comes with the vehicle when purchased. The 110V charger is rated up to 12 amps or up to 16 amps depending on the household receptacle being used. It is recommended to use a dedicated 110V electrical outlet to ensure adequate current supply for charging. A 220V (AC Level 2) charging station can also be utilized which is rated up to 80 amps.

The SOBDM, also known as the Battery Charger Control Module (BCCM), is an air-cooled component that charges both the high voltage battery and the low voltage (12V) battery when the vehicle is not operating and plugged into a (110V or 220V) EVSE. The SOBDM is known as the on-board charger. Its primary function is to coordinate charging operations and convert AC to DC. The SOBDM incorporates an integrated module that communicates with other modules over the HS-CAN, and is located inside the high voltage battery pack electronics compartment.

When the EVSE is plugged into the vehicle charging port, the CPLR indicates the current Customer State-of-Charge (CSoC) and charging operations of the high voltage battery. The CPLR is a light ring surrounding the charge port inlet that displays charging, charging faults and charging status using four LED light segments.



E159759

The SOBDM, also known as the BCCM (Battery Charger Control Module), charges the high voltage battery and has an internal DC to DC Converter Control Module to maintain the 12V battery while vehicle is plugged into an external 110V or 220V AC EVSE. The SOBDM is an air-cooled component that converts an input voltage of (120 or 240 volts) AC to high-voltage DC and low-voltage DC power, while maintaining electrical isolation between the systems. When plugged into an external power source the SOBDM is enabled and charges the high voltage battery (168-361 volts) and the low-voltage battery (12-15 volts). The SOBDM steps the high-voltage down to a low-voltage (between 12 and 15 volts, depending on vehicle needs), providing power to charge the vehicle low-voltage battery. During charge the SOBDM incorporates an internal DC/DC converter to charge the low-voltage battery directly.

When the EVSE cord is plugged in the SOBDM wakes up by sensing a control pilot signal. The pilot signal duty cycle is analyzed to determine AC line capacity and the frequency is monitored to make sure it is in the proper range. The EVSE monitors the pilot signal to determine when to turn on AC output. A separate proximity circuit signal is analyzed to confirm if the connection is stable and the S3 button on the external charger cord is released. If both signals are in correct range, the SOBDM transmits an on-plug message via HEV HS-CAN. The SOBDM confirms the gear position is in park and that the vehicle is not in torque producing mode via HEV HS-CAN and closes an internal S2 switch signaling the EVSE to send AC voltage to the SOBDM. The high voltage system does not charge if the gear position is is not in park or if the vehicle is started.

Switch S2 detection is determined by the pilot signal voltage change. If the AC voltage input is within range the SOBDM enables 12V battery charging and wakes up the BECM. While waiting to enter high voltage charging state, the SOBDM sets low voltage output to a minimum of 12.6V until it receives a low-voltage setpoint from the PCM via HEV HS-CAN. The SOBDM is ready for high voltage power conversion when it transmits a charger-ready message via the HEV HS-CAN.

The SOBDM internally transitions from a ready state to charging state of the high voltage battery upon receipt of a battery charge ready or charging message from the BECM via the HEV HS-CAN. When the BECM status goes from a charge ready to a charging state the charge contactors are closed to begin charging the high voltage battery. The SOBDM limits the voltage and current to the high voltage battery based on the maximum voltage and

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 147 OF 207

current requests from the BECM via the HEV HS-CAN. The SOBDM transmits high voltage and current output internal measurements to the BECM via the HEV HS-CAN.

During high voltage charging the BECM commands the outside air (OSA) duct mode door actuator to open. This allows outside air to be pulled into the High Voltage Battery pack to cool SOBDM. The BECM monitors the mode door position and motor circuits and sets a DTC if a fault is detected. The SOBDM monitors its internal temperature and commands the charger cooling fan speed accordingly to prevent overheating. When high-voltage charging is complete the BECM charging state HEV HS-CAN message switches from charging to charging complete and opens the high voltage charge contactors. The SOBDM continues to charge the 12V battery while AC input is present except when commanded off by the SOBDMC.

During high 12V electrical loads or if the ignition is turned on while the vehicle is plugged in the main DC to DC Converter Control Module is enabled to charge the 12V battery. If this occurs, the SOBDM disables its low-voltage support and no longer charges the 12V battery. However, it continues charging the high voltage battery. The SOBDM shuts down if the PCM no longer requests low-voltage support and the BECM status is charge complete.

If the release button (S3) on the EVSE is pressed while low-voltage or high-voltage charging is in progress, the SOBDM detects a change of proximity circuit voltage. The high-voltage and the low-voltage DC charging simultaneously stops. The SOBDM disables power conversion and opens the internal S2 switch. When the EVSE detects an open S2 switch by sensing a pilot signal voltage change, it drops the AC voltage output to zero so the charger cord can be safely removed. This prevents arcing of the charge port terminals when the EVSE cord is disconnected.

The CPLR displays the current SoC and charging operations of the high voltage battery. When plugged into an external power source (120 or 240 volts), the CPLR activates the light ring around the charge inlet port and performs a cord acknowledgment. If successful, this sequence flashes one light segment one at a time in order. The segments shut off and this sequence repeats 2 times. The CPLR displays charging, charging faults, and charging status. The light ring is segmented into 4 equal LEDs, each indicating the state of charge: • One segment flashing < 25% charged • One segment lit (one segment flashing) > 25% charged • Two segments lit (one segment flashing) > 75% charged. A flashing ring segment indicates a charge is in progress. When all four rings are solidly lit, the charging operation is complete. If less than four rings are lit solid charging is not ready. When the charge is complete an internal timer starts to do a 3-5 minute shutoff to turn the LEDs off and put the module to sleep. The LEDs remain off until a Puddle Light Activation command is sent via the key fob or door handle. If there is a fault, all LED segments flash rapidly for no more than 5 minutes before going to sleep. LEDs illumination varies depending if it is daytime or nighttime.

To remove the EVSE cord press the release button to stop the charging process. All the LEDs shut off indicating it is safe to unplug the cord. There is a customer preference setting in the APIM to customize the operation of the CPLR. The options available include: 1. LEDs On (normal operation) 2. LEDs Off except for Cord Acknowledgements and Puddle Light Activation requests, 3. LEDs Off (this setting prevents LED operation for any reason).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 148 OF 207

Battery Charge Control Module Performance Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0D20 - Battery Charger Output Voltage Performance
	P0E64 - Battery Charger Enable Circuit Range/Performance
Monitor execution	P0D20: Charger active; connected to EVSE, S2 closed, and utility A/C is present to charger input
	P0E64: Charger is in ready state and Chrg_Wkup is high
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	30 sec

# **Battery Charge Control Module Performance malfunction thresholds:**

P0D20 - Charger high voltage output power is less than expected output power.

P0E64 - BECM reports not ready state for 30 seconds

Battery Energy Control Module Performance Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0E89 - Battery Charger "B" Input Current Too High
	P0E87 - Battery Charger "B" Input Voltage Too High
	U0293 - Lost Communication With Hybrid/EV Powertrain Control Module
	U0412 - Invalid Data Received From Battery Energy Control Module "A"
	U0111 - Lost Communication With Battery Energy Control Module "A"
Monitor execution	P0E89: Charger is in ready state
	P0E87: Charger is in ready state
	All others: continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	< 1 sec

# **Battery Energy Control Module Performance malfunction thresholds:**

P0E89 - The received battery charging current request > 100A

P0E87 - The received battery charging voltage request > 450V

U0293 - HPCM CAN message missing for 5 seconds

U0412 - BECM CAN signal reporting invalid states for 5 seconds

U0111 - BECM CAN message missing for 5 seconds

Battery Charging System Contactor Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0D08 - Battery Charging System Positive Contactor "A" Stuck Closed
	P0D0F - Battery Charging System Negative Contactor Stuck Closed
	P0D09 - Battery Charging System Positive Contactor Stuck Open
	P0D0A - Battery Charging System Positive Contactor Control Circuit/Open
Monitor execution	P0D08: Charge contactors are commanded open
	P0D0F: Charge contactors are commanded open
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	< 1 sec

#### **Battery Charging System Contactor malfunction thresholds:**

P0D08 – the high voltage measurement reported by BCCM is greater than the pack voltage minus 20V for 3 seconds OR the high voltage measurement reported by BCCM is greater than the pack voltage minus 20V for 6 seconds at initial power up

P0D0F – the high voltage measurement reported by BCCM is greater than the pack voltage minus 20V for 3 seconds OR the high voltage measurement reported by BCCM is greater than the pack voltage minus 20V for 6 seconds at initial power up

P0D09 - The BECM considers the charge contactors stuck open when all of the followings are TRUE for 10 seconds:

- 1) High voltage reported by BCCM is outside of 5% of battery pack voltage
- 2) Both charge contactors are commanded closed
- 3) Both charge contactors have power
- 4) BCCM measured current is less than 0.5A

P0D0A - The BECM considers Charging System Positive Contactor Control Circuit/Open when all of the followings are TRUE for 10 seconds:

- 1) High voltage reported by BCCM is outside of 5% of battery pack voltage
- 2) Both charge contactors are commanded closed
- 3) One or both charge contactors have no power
- 4) BCCM measured current is less than 0.5A

Battery Charging System Contactor Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0D0D - Battery Charging System Positive Contactor Control Circuit High
	P0D0B - Battery Charging System Positive Contactor Control Circuit Range/Performance
	P0D14 - Battery Charging System Negative Contactor Control Circuit High
Monitor execution	P0D0D: Chrg_Wkup is HIGH and the positive charge contactor is commanded closed
	P0D14: Chrg_Wkup is HIGH and the negative charge contactor is commanded closed
	P0D0B: Chrg_Wkup is HIGH and any charge contactor is commanded closed
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	<1sec

#### **Battery Charging System Contactor malfunction thresholds:**

P0D0D - The positive charge contactor driver reports over current for 0.04 second

P0D14 - The negative charge contactor driver reports over current for 0.04 second

P0D0B - The high side contactor driver reports limited/over current for 0.02 second

Battery Charging System Fan Performance Operation:	
DTCs	P0483 - Fan Performance
Monitor execution	continuous
Monitor Sequence	BCCM is commanding the fan
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	60 sec

# **Battery Charging System Fan Performance malfunction thresholds:**

P0483 – Any of the following condition is true:

- 1) The fan is commanded on by the BCCM for at least 10 seconds, and fan commanded speed >= 400 rpm, and fan speed feedback <= 200 rpm for 60 sec
- 2) The fan is commanded off by the BCCM for at least 10 seconds, and fan commanded speed <= 0 rpm and fan speed feedback >= 50 rpm for 60 sec

#### **High Voltage Battery - Overview**

The plug in hybrid can be used as an electric vehicle, conventional hybrid vehicle, or both. The high voltage battery on the plug in hybrid application has more capacity than a full hybrid application and can be fully charged using EVSE (Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment) connected to the vehicle charge port. An EV button is located on the steering wheel to change the vehicle operating strategy.

The vehicle can be placed in electric mode only (EV NOW) allowing only the electric motor to propel the vehicle. In this mode the high voltage battery depletes and the gas engine does not operate unless a calibratable condition exists such as a malfunction, heavy acceleration, high electric motor temperature, elevated high voltage battery temperature, low high voltage battery state of charge, or certain climate control functions are selected (e.g. defrost).

The high-voltage system utilizes approximately 300 volts DC, provided through high-voltage cables to its components and modules. The high-voltage cables and wiring are identified by orange harness tape or orange wire covering. All high-voltage components are marked with high-voltage warning labels with a high-voltage symbol.

The high voltage battery pack consists of the following components:

High voltage battery service disconnect

High voltage battery RH and LH cooling inlet ducts

High voltage battery cooling fan and air outlet duct

High voltage battery inlet air temperature sensor

SOBDM/BCCM (Battery Charger Control Module)

SOBDM outside air duct

SOBDM cooling fan

**BECM** (Battery Energy Control Module)

DC/DC (Direct Current/Direct Current) converter control module

High voltage battery junction box

High voltage low current fuse (x3)

High voltage high current fuse

High voltage battery cell array cover (not serviceable)

High voltage battery cell arrays (not serviceable)

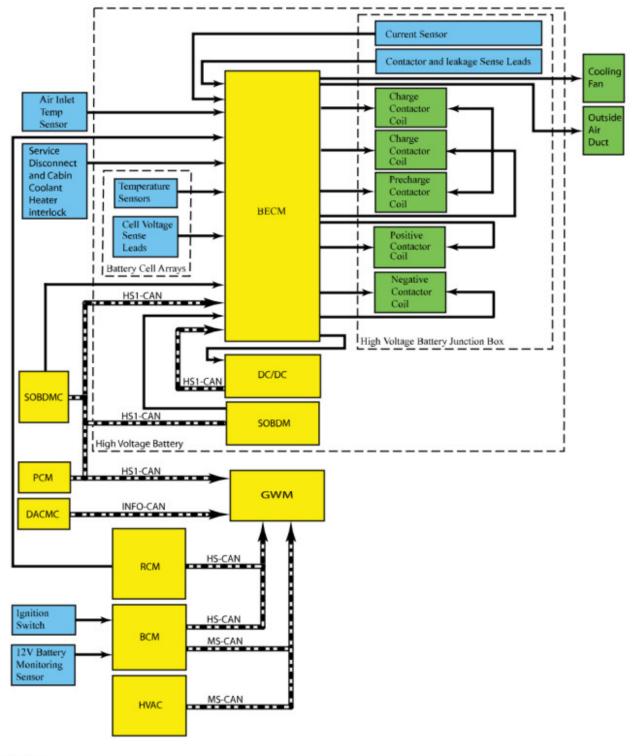
High voltage battery wiring harness (not serviceable)

The high voltage battery cell array cover, high voltage battery cell arrays, and high voltage battery wiring harness are serviced as part of the entire high voltage battery pack.

Direct Current/Direct Current (DC/DC) Converter Control Module

The Direct Current/Direct Current (DC/DC) converter control module is an air-cooled component that converts high voltage (168-361 volt) DC power to low-voltage (12 volt) DC power. The converter provides power to the vehicle 12-volt battery and low-voltage electrical systems. The SOBDMC requests the DC/DC converter control module to turn ON through an enable message over HS-CAN. The PCM sends a charging voltage setpoint request over HS-CAN to DC/DC converter control module. Depending on the vehicle and environmental conditions, the DC/DC converter control module is capable of outputting as many as 145 amps to the 12-volt battery.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 152 OF 207



E160358

#### **Battery Energy Control Module (BECM)**

The BECM manages the condition of the high voltage battery to control its charging and discharging. The BECM also manages the cooling of the high voltage battery by controlling a fan attached to the high voltage battery pack cooling outlet duct. The BECM monitors the individual cell voltages and temperature sensors internal to the battery arrays. The BECM also monitors the battery current using a sensor located in the high voltage battery junction box. This information is needed by the BECM to control the high voltage battery and determine its ability to receive and provide power to the vehicle. The BECM communicates with other vehicle modules on the High Speed Controller Area Network (HS-CAN).

The BECM receives the following hard-wired inputs:

High voltage battery service disconnect interlock status

Cabin Coolant heater interlock status (PHEV)

Event notification status from the RCM

High Speed Controller Area Network (HS-CAN)

High voltage battery inlet air temperature sensor

High voltage battery cooling fan feedback

Outside air duct mode door actuator position (PHEV)

The BECM provides the following outputs:

High voltage battery cooling fan PWM supply voltage

Outside air duct mode door actuator (PHEV)

High voltage battery junction box contactor control

High Speed Controller Area Network (HS-CAN) information

Battery Energy Control Module Performance Check Operation:	
DTCs	U1030 - Software Incompatibility With Hybrid/EV Battery
	U0300 - Internal Control Module Software Incompatibility
	U019B - Lost Communication With Battery Charger Control Module
	U049C - Invalid Data Received From Battery Charger Control Module "A"
	U0293 - Lost Communication with Hybrid/EV Powertrain Control Module
	U3012 - Control Module Improper Wake-up Performance
	P062F - Internal Control Module EEPROM Error
Monitor execution	
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	< 1 sec

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 154 OF 207

## **Battery Energy Control Module Performance malfunction thresholds:**

U1030 - Battery pack cell type and software cell type mismatch detected in current power cycle

U0300 - The BECM software does not match the BECM hardware.

U019B - BCCM CAN message missing for 5 sec

U049C – BCCM CAN signal reporting invalid states for 5 seconds

U0293 – HPCM CAN message missing for 1 second or 5 seconds.

U3012 - Power Sustain Relay Voltage <= 8 V or Contactor Open Request Not Received. Contactors are latched open due to LOW PSR but HPCM still requests contactors closed.

P062F - BECM detects EEPROM failure

Battery Pack Current Sensor Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0AC1 - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack Current Sensor "A" Circuit Low
	P0AC2 - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack Current Sensor "A" Circuit High
	P0AC0 - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack Current Sensor "A" Circuit Range/Performance
	P0AC3 - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack Current Sensor "A" Circuit Intermittent/Erratic
	P0B13 - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack Current Sensor "A"/"B" Correlation
Monitor execution	P0AC0: At a power up before contactors are closed
	P0B13: At power up
	All others: continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	< 1 sec

## **Battery Pack Current Sensor malfunction thresholds:**

P0AC1 - Battery current <= -293.75 A for 1 second

P0AC2 - Battery current => 293.75 A for 1 second

P0AC0 – Battery current <= -3A or => 3A at power up before contactors are closed for 1 second

P0AC3 – Battery current sensor reference voltage > 5.5V or < 4.5 V for 0.5 second

P0B13 – The measured change in State of Charge (SOC) from current sensor of the previous drive cycle has > 50% SOC error/hour relative to the SOC calculated from change in open circuit voltage.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 155 OF 207

Battery Pack Cell Voltage Monitori	ng Circuit Check Operation:
DTCs	P0B3B - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "A" Circuit
	P0B40 - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "B" Circuit
	P0B45 - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "C" Circuit
	P0B4A - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "D" Circuit
	P0B4F - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "E" Circuit
	P0B54 - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "F" Circuit
	P0B59 - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "G" Circuit
	P0B5E - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "H" Circuit
	P0B63 - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "I" Circuit
	P0B68 - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "J" Circuit
	P0B6D - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "K" Circuit
	P0B72 - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "L" Circuit
	P0B77 - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "M" Circuit
	P0B7C - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "N" Circuit
Monitor execution	5.5 seconds has been passed since power up
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	11 seconds

# **Battery Pack Cell Voltage Monitoring Circuit malfunction thresholds:**

For the 6 cells monitored by each circuit: Any individual cell voltage is > 5V or < 1V for 11 seconds

Battery Pack Sensor	r Check Operation:
DTCs	P0B1B - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack Voltage Sense "C" Circuit Low
	P0B1C - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack Voltage Sense "C" Circuit High
	P0B16 - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack Voltage Sense "B" Circuit Low
	P0B17 - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack Voltage Sense "B" Circuit High
	P0BB3 - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "Y" Circuit
	P0BB8 - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "Z" Circuit
	P0B15 - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack Voltage Sense "B" Circuit Range/Performance
	P0B1A - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack Voltage Sense "C" Circuit Range/Performance
	P0ECA - Hybrid/EV Battery Temperature Sensor System - Multiple Sensor Correlation
	P0BB4 - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "Y" Circuit Range/Performance
	P0BB9 - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage Sense "Z" Circuit Range/Performance
Monitor execution	P0BB4: Positive contactor is commanded closed
	P0BB9: Negative contactor is commanded closed
	All others: Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	< 1 sec

#### **Battery Pack Sensor malfunction thresholds:**

- P0B1B Negative half pack voltage sensor is short to ground for 1 second
- P0B1C Negative half pack voltage sensor is short to battery or open circuit for 1 second
- P0B16 Positive half pack voltage sensor is short to ground for 1 second
- P0B17 Positive half pack voltage sensor is short to battery or open circuit for 1 second
- P0BB3 Main contactor positive voltage sensor is shorted or open circuit for 1 second
- P0BB8 Main contactor negative voltage sensor is shorted or open circuit for 1 second
- P0B15 | Top half pack voltage the summation of cell voltages within the top half pack | > 42V (PHEV) or 38V (FHEV) for 1 second
- P0B1A  $\mid$  Bottom half pack voltage the summation of cell voltages within the bottom half pack  $\mid$  > 42V (PHEV) or 38V (FHEV) for 1 second
- P0ECA Three or more occurrences of any of the following conditions for 5 seconds
  - | Average thermistor reading any thermistor reading | > 25 degree C
  - Any thermistor reading > 95 degree C
  - Any thermistor reading is < -50 degree C</li>
- P0BB4 | Positive contactor voltage positive half pack voltage | > 55V (PHEV) or 50V (FHEV) for 1 second
- P0BB9 | Negative contactor voltage negative half pack voltage | > 55V (PHEV) or 50V (FHEV) for 1 second

Battery Pack Performance Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0B24 - Hybrid/EV Battery "A" Voltage Unstable
	P0B25 - Hybrid/EV Battery "A" Voltage Low
	P0C30 - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack State of Charge High
	P0A7D - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack State of Charge Low
	P0AFB - Hybrid/EV Battery System Voltage High
	P0D37 - Hybrid/EV Battery System Current High
	P0A7F - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack Deterioration
Monitor execution	P0A7D: When vehicle is cranking
	All others: Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	< 15 seconds

# **Battery Pack Performance malfunction thresholds:**

P0B25 - Main contactors are closed, and any cell SOC  $\leq$  0% for 10 seconds; or main contactors are open, and any cell SOC  $\leq$  0% for 90 seconds

P0B24 - | Average cell voltage  $-\,$  any cell voltage | > 0.5V for 15 seconds

#### P0C30 -

- State of charge => 100% when charge contactors are open (main contactors open or closed) for 15 seconds (PHEV) or 11 seconds (FHEV)
- Cell voltage > 4.5V (PHEV) or 4.35V (FHEV) when charge contactors are open (main contactors open or closed) for 2 seconds (PHEV) or 3 seconds (FHEV)
- State for charge => 101% when charge contactors are closed for 15 seconds
- Cell voltage > 4.25 V when charge contactors are closed for 3 seconds

P0AFB – Pack voltage > 362.2 V (PHEV) or 327.8V (FHEV) for 10 seconds

P0A7D – Battery pack voltage is less than 184.8V (PHEV) or 167.2V (FHEV), or minimum cell voltage is less than 2.1V for 0.5 seconds P0B25 – State of change = 0% with main contactors open or closed

P0D37 - 60 seconds battery RMS current >= 250A or 200 seconds battery RMS current >= 180A

P0A7F – High voltage battery end-of-life counter is greater or equal to 3. Note counter gets incremented every time a power pulse below 12kW is detected

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 158 OF 207

#### **Cell Balancing**

Individual cells can deviate over the life of the high voltage battery. The purpose of cell balancing is to equalize the individual cell charges. By balancing the cells the high voltage battery maintains top efficiency. The BECM continuously monitors individual battery cell voltages and will perform balancing automatically only when required. When balancing is performed BECM discharges individual cells with the highest voltage to match the remaining cells.

Battery Pack Cell Balance C	Circuit Check Operation:
DTCs	P0DAD - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "A" Stuck On.
	P0DB1 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "B" Stuck On.
	P0DB5 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "C" Stuck On.
	P0DB9 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "D" Stuck On.
	P0DBD - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "E" Stuck On.
	P0DC1 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "F" Stuck On.
	P0DC5 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "G" Stuck On.
	P0DC9 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "H" Stuck On.
	P0DCD - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "I" Stuck On.
	P0DD1 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "J" Stuck On.
	P0DD5 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "K" Stuck On.
	P0DD9 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "L" Stuck On.
	P0DDD - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "M" Stuck On.
	P0DE1 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "N" Stuck On.
	P0DAE - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "A" Stuck Off.
	P0DB2 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "B" Stuck Off.
	P0DB6 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "C" Stuck Off.
	P0DBA. Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "D" Stuck Off.
	P0DBE. Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "E" Stuck Off.
	P0DC2 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "F" Stuck Off.
	P0DC6 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "G" Stuck Off.
	P0DCA - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "H" Stuck Off.
	P0DCE. Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "I" Stuck Off.
	P0DD2 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "J" Stuck Off.
	P0DD6 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "K" Stuck Off.
	P0DDA - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "L" Stuck Off.
	P0DDE - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "M" Stuck Off.
	P0DE2 - Hybrid/EV Battery Cell Balancing Circuit "N" Stuck Off.
Monitor execution	At a power up before contactors are closed
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	100 msec

#### **Battery Pack Cell Balance Circuit Check malfunction thresholds:**

For the 6 cells monitored by each circuit: Any individual cell voltage differs from the average cell voltage by > 75 mV for 0.1 second

Battery Pack Contactor Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0AA4 - Hybrid/EV Battery Negative Contactor Circuit Stuck Closed	
	P0AA5 - Hybrid/EV Battery Negative Contactor Circuit Stuck Open	
	P0AA1 - Hybrid/EV Battery Positive Contactor Circuit Stuck Closed	
	P0AA2 - Hybrid/EV Battery Positive Contactor Circuit Stuck Open	
Monitor execution	P0AA4: Negative contactor is commanded open	
	P0AA5: Negative contactor is commanded closed	
	P0AA1: Positive contactor is commanded open	
	P0AA2: Positive contactor is commanded closed	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK		
Monitoring Duration	< 1 sec	

## **Battery Pack Contactor malfunction thresholds:**

P0AA4 – There is power to the contactor and negative contactor status remains closed for 0.2 second. Closed is defined as:

- Negative Contactor Measurement is > 90% Negative Half Pack voltage AND
- Negative Contactor Measurement is < 110% Negative Half Pack voltage AND</li>
- Negative Contactor Measurement is > 30 volts.

P0AA5 - There is power to the contactor and the contactor state is determined open for 2.4 seconds.

Open is defined as NOT closed (i.e. mutually exclusive). Closed is defined above:

P0AA1 - There is power to the contactor and positive contactor status remains closed for 0.2 second. Closed is defined as:

- Positive Contactor Measurement is > 90% Positive Half Pack voltage AND
- Positive Contactor Measurement is < 110% Positive Half Pack voltage AND</li>
- Positive Contactor Measurement is > 30 volts

P0AA2 - There is power to the contactor and the contactor state is determined open for 2.4 seconds.

Open is defined as NOT closed (i.e. mutually exclusive). Closed is defined above.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 160 OF 207

Battery Pack Contact	tor Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0ADD - Hybrid/EV Battery Negative Contactor Control Circuit/Open	
	P0AE0 - Hybrid/EV Battery Negative Contactor Control Circuit High	
	P0AD9 - Hybrid/EV Battery Positive Contactor Control Circuit/Open	
	P0ADC - Hybrid/EV Battery Positive Contactor Control Circuit High	
	P0ADA - Hybrid/EV Battery Positive Contactor Control Circuit Range/Performance.	
	P1A1E - Hybrid/EV Battery Contactor Control Signal	
Monitor execution	P0ADD: Battery interlock is normal AND PSR or Charge Wakeup is High	
	P0AE0: PSR or Charge Wakeup is High	
	P0AD9: Battery interlock is normal AND PSR or Charge Wakeup is High	
	P0ADC: PSR or Charge Wakeup is High	
	P0ADA: PSR or Charge Wakeup is High	
	P1A1E: PSR or Charge Wakeup is High	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK		
Monitoring Duration	< 1 sec	

# **Battery Pack Contactor malfunction thresholds:**

POADD - Negative Contactor state is open AND one of the following is TRUE:

- 1.) The contactors are commanded closed (completed the power up sequence) and the negative contactor has no power for 1.6 seconds
- 2.) The contactors are being commanded closed, precharge has not yet passed or failed, and the negative contactor has no power for 0.4 seconds
- P0AE0 The negative contactor is commanded closed AND the negative contactor driver reports limited current for 0.04 second.
- P0AD9 Positive Contactor state is open AND one of the following is TRUE:
- 1.) The contactors are commanded closed (completed the power up sequence) and the positive contactor has no power for 1.6 seconds
- 2.) The contactors are being commanded closed, precharge has not yet passed or failed, and the positive contactor has no power for 0.4 seconds.
- P0ADC The positive contactor is commanded closed AND the positive contactor driver reports limited current for 0.04 second.
- P0ADA Any vehicle contactor is commanded closed and the high side contactor driver reports limited/over current for 0.02 second.
- P1A1E Contactors are commanded closed, but both positive contactor and negative contactor are stuck open for 1.3 seconds

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 161 OF 207

Battery Pack Precha	rge Contactor Check Operation:
DTCs	P0AE1 - Hybrid/EV Battery Precharge Contactor Circuit
	P0AE7 - Hybrid/EV Battery Precharge Contactor Control Circuit High
	P0AE5 - Hybrid/EV Battery Precharge Contactor Control Circuit Range/Performance
Monitor execution	P0AE1: Precharge contactor is commanded closed
	P0AE7: PSR or Charge Wakeup is High, main negative contactor is not commanded closed, mad the precharge contactor is commanded closed
	P0AE5: Precharge contactor is commanded closed.
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	< 1 sec

#### **Battery Pack Precharge Contactor malfunction thresholds:**

P0AE1 - Battery current < -10A or > 10A

P0AE7 - The precharge contactor driver reports limited current for 0.04 second

P0AE5 - | Pack voltage - the summation of contactor voltages | > 20V for 0.04 second

Battery Pack Cooling Fan Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0A81 - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack Cooling Fan 1 Control Circuit
	P0A82 - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack Cooling Fan 1 Performance/Stuck Off P0A83 - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack Cooling Fan 1 Stuck On
Monitor execution	P0A82: The fan has been commanded on for at least 6 seconds
	P0A83: The fan has been commanded off for at least 6 seconds
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	< 45 sec

#### **Battery Pack Cooling Fan malfunction thresholds:**

P0A81 – Fan control output circuit fault indicated by output driver for 5 seconds

P0A82 - The following conditions are true for 45 seconds:

- 1) Fan speed command is greater than or equal to 699 RPM
- 2) Fan speed feedback indicates fan speed is less than or equal to 400 RPM
- 3) Battery pack temperature is greater than 45 degree C

P0A83 - The following conditions are true for 45 seconds:

- 1) Fan speed command is less than or equal to 0 RPM
- 2) Fan speed feedback indicates fan speed is greater than or equal to 699 RPM

Battery Charging Performance Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0D07 - Hybrid/EV Battery Pack Cooling Fan 1 Control Circuit	
	P0D22 - Battery Charger Output Current Performance	
	P0D85 - Battery Charging Output Voltage Too High	
	P0D5C - Battery Charger Hybrid/EV Battery Output Power Performance	
	U301D - Control Module Wake-up Circuit "A" Performance	
Monitor execution	P0D07: CHRG_WKUP is present and charge contactors are commanded closed	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK		
Monitoring Duration	< 20 sec	

# **Battery Charging Performance malfunction thresholds:**

P0D07 – Both positive charge contactor and negative charge contactor are stuck open for 1.3 seconds.

P0D22 – The charging voltage request is higher than the BCCM output voltage by 10V, but | BCCM output current - charging current request | > 8.5A for 20 seconds

P0D85 - The BCCM output voltage is higher than charging voltage request by 20.82V for 20 seconds

P0D5C - The high voltage battery is in charge ready but the BCCM output voltage is less than 168V for 1 second

U301D - During the charger precahrge stage, BECM detects CHRG\_WKUP low when charger output voltage is within BECM charge contactor closure threshold and BECM has not yet request contactors closed

Battery Charging Contactor Check	Operation:
DTCs	P0D08 - Battery Charging System Positive Contactor "A" Stuck Closed
	P0D0F - Battery Charging System Negative Contactor Stuck Closed
	P0D09 - Battery Charging System Positive Contactor Stuck Open
	P0D0A - Battery Charging System Positive Contactor Control Circuit/Open
Monitor execution	P0D08: Charge contactors are commanded open
	P0D0F: Charge contactors are commanded open
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	< 1 sec

## **Battery Charging Contactor malfunction thresholds:**

P0D08 – the high voltage measurement reported by BCCM is greater than the pack voltage minus 20V for 3 seconds OR the high voltage measurement reported by BCCM is greater than the pack voltage minus 20V for 6 seconds at initial power up

P0D0F – the high voltage measurement reported by BCCM is greater than the pack voltage minus 20V for 3 seconds OR the high voltage measurement reported by BCCM is greater than the pack voltage minus 20V for 6 seconds at initial power up

P0D09 - The BECM considers the charge contactors stuck open when all of the followings are TRUE for 10 seconds:

- 1) High voltage reported by BCCM is outside of 5% of battery pack voltage
- 2) Both charge contactors are commanded closed
- 3) Both charge contactors have power
- 4) BCCM measured current is less than 0.5A

P0D0A - The BECM considers Charging System Positive Contactor Control Circuit/Open when all of the followings are TRUE for 10 seconds:

- 1) High voltage reported by BCCM is outside of 5% of battery pack voltage
- 2) Both charge contactors are commanded closed
- 3) One or both charge contactors have no power
- 4) BCCM measured current is less than 0.5A

<b>Battery Pack Contact</b>	or Check Operation:
DTCs	P0D0D - Battery Charging System Positive Contactor Control Circuit High
	P0D14 - Battery Charging System Negative Contactor Control Circuit High
	P0D0B - Battery Charging System Positive Contactor Control Circuit Range/Performance
Monitor execution	P0D0D: Chrg_Wkup is HIGH and the positive charge contactor is commanded closed
	P0D14: Chrg_Wkup is HIGH and the negative charge contactor is commanded closed
	P0D0B: Chrg_Wkup is HIGH and any charge contactor is commanded closed
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	< 1 sec

#### **Battery Pack Contactor malfunction thresholds:**

P0D0D - The positive charge contactor driver reports over current for 0.04 second

P0D14 - The negative charge contactor driver reports over current for 0.04 second

P0D0B - The high side contactor driver reports limited/over current for 0.02 second

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 164 OF 207

# **Powersplit Transaxle**

#### **Transmission Overview**

The Electronically Controlled Continuously Variable Transmission (eCVT) has the following internal components:

- Traction Motor
- Generator/Starter
- High voltage terminals
- Pump and filter assembly
- Transmission fluid auxiliary pump
- Transmission Range (TR) sensor
- Transmission Fluid Temperature (TFT) sensor
- Planetary carrier
- Differential carrier

When the transmission range is in the park position the park pawl locks the final drive to the transmission case and the vehicle cannot be moved. The vehicle can be turned on and the ready indicator light illuminates to indicate the selector lever can be moved out of park and the vehicle can be driven.

When the transmission range is in the reverse position, the TCM changes the polarity of the field coil which reverses the electric motor to move the vehicle in reverse.

When the transmission range is in the neutral position, the electric motor does not provide power to or hold the final drive and the final drive can spin freely.

When the transmission range is in the drive position, the TCM provides high voltage current to the electric motor to transfer torque to the final drive.

When the transmission range is in the low position, the transmission increases regenerative braking when the accelerator pedal is released to provide an engine braking feeling and increased battery charging.

The TFT sensor is a thermistor located on the internal transmission harness. It sends a voltage signal to the TCM. The voltage signal varies with TFT. The TFT sensor cannot be serviced in vehicle, the transmission must be removed and disassembled.

The TR sensor assembly is an internally mounted sensor that includes the detent bracket. The components of the TR sensor are factory adjusted and installed as a calibrated assembly. The TR sensor contains electronic circuitry that provides the PCM a fixed frequency duty cycle for each of the various positions of the manual lever (PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, DRIVE and LOW). The TR sensor cannot be serviced in vehicle, the transmission must be removed and disassembled. The PCM uses the TR sensor signal for range selection, torque calculation and reverse lamp operation.

In electric mode, torque flows from the electric motor to the transfer shaft and to the final drive ring gear. When the engine is off, the planetary carrier is held and the planetary ring gear is driven by the transfer shaft. This action causes the sun gear and the generator/starter to rotate. Under certain conditions, the SOBDMC will command the generator/starter to produce electricity for the electric motor and to charge the batteries.

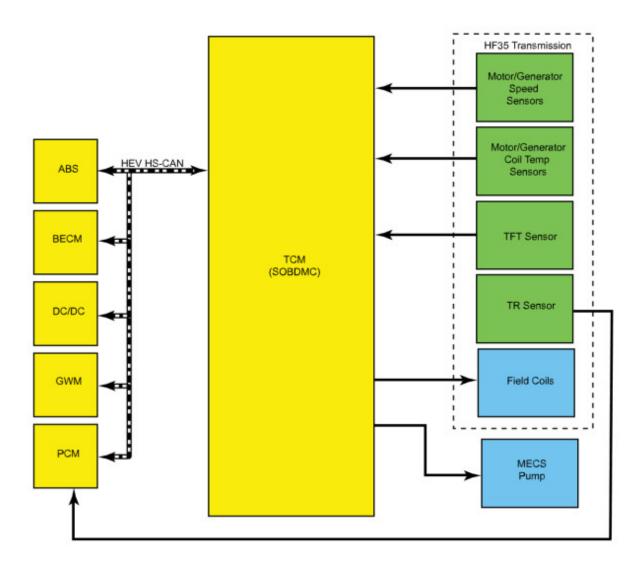
To start the engine, the final drive works as a holding element to the ring gear in the planetary assembly. The generator/starter turns the sun gear to start the engine.

To charge the batteries, the final drive works as a holding element to the ring gear in the planetary assembly. The engine turns the carrier. This action allows the generator/starter to produce current to charge the batteries and power the electric motor.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 165 OF 207

When additional torque is needed to propel the vehicle, the generator/starter works as a holding element to the planetary sun gear. The flow of torque from the transfer shaft to the planetary ring gear is reversed and torque from the engine combines with the electric motor torque at the transfer shaft.

The system diagram is shown below.



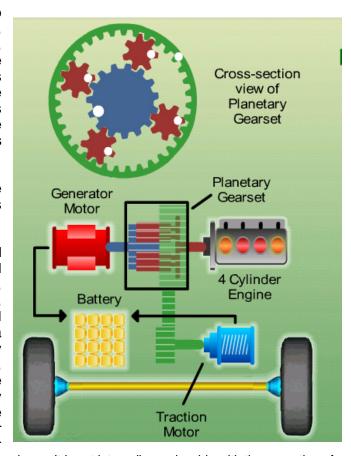
E159597

#### **Transmission Control System Architecture**

The primary function of the Powersplit transaxle is to manage torque between the electric motors, engine, and driveline. The planetary gear set provides series, parallel and split paths for power distribution from the battery and engine. The torque ratio between the series path and the parallel path is fixed by the geometry of the planetary gear set. The power split between the series path and the parallel path is determined by the relative speeds (all series if vehicle speed is zero and engine is on; all parallel if generator is stopped; split otherwise)

The system behavior is similar to a CVT with the effective gear ratio between the engine and the wheels is determined by the split.

The transaxle is controlled directly by the Hybrid Powertrain Control Module (HPCM). The HPCM communicates to the Engine Control Module (ECM), ABS Module, Battery Energy Control Module (BECM), and Body Control Module (BCM) using the high speed CAN communication link. The HPCM incorporates a standalone OBD-II system. The HPCM independently processes and stores fault codes, freeze frame, supports industry-standard PIDs as well as J1979 Mode 09 CALID and CVN. The HPCM does not directly illuminate the MIL, but requests the ECM to do so. The HPCM is located inside the Inverter System Controller (ISC) which also houses the motor and generator power



electronics and the Variable Voltage Controller (VVC) hardware. It is not internally serviceable with the exception of reprogramming.

#### **Transmission Inputs**

#### **Rotor Position Sensors**

A Rotor position sensor (resolver) is located on both the electric Motor and Generator and is used to detect the angular position of the rotor. The analog waveform generated by the resolver is converted into a digital signal by the Resolver to Digital (R/D) converter. The digital signal is used to calculate speed and angular acceleration which is used to control the electric Motor and Generator. The speed information is also used to calculate vehicle speed and is broadcasted to other modules over CAN. If a resolver hardware or wiring fault is detected, or a failure with the R/D converter is detected, a POC50 fault for the motor or a POC64 fault for the generator will be stored. If the resolver was not properly configured (initialized) by the assembly plant or if the ISC is replaced, a POC17 will be stored for the motor, or PODFC will be stored for the generator.

## **Temperature Sensors**

The Transmission Fluid Temperature Sensor (TFT) is monitored for open and short circuit faults and for in-range faults (P071x) where Trans Fluid, Motor Coil and Generator Coil temperatures do not correlate properly.

The Motor and Generator Coil Temperature Sensors are monitored for open and short circuit faults and for in-range faults where Trans Fluid, Motor Coil and Generator Coil temperatures do not correlate properly. P0A2C, P0A2D and P0A2B are related to Motor Coil Sensor failure, P0A38 and P0A39, and P0A37 are related to Generator Coil Sensor failure. The Motor and Generator coils are also monitored for over-temperature (P0A2F-94).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 167 OF 207

The Motor and Generator Inverter Temperature Sensors are monitored for open and short circuit faults. P0AEF and P0AF0 are related to Motor Inverter Sensor failure, P0BCE and P0BCF are related to Generator Inverter Sensor failure. The Motor and Generator Inverters are also monitored for over-temperature (P0A3C-94).

#### **HPCM Outputs**

#### **Inverter Control**

Upon receiving the wheel torque demanded by the driver from the ECM over CAN communication, the HPCM calculates the required torque of the electric Motor and Generator to meet driver demand. The HPCM will then control the inverter over U, V, and W phase gate signals to regulate DC current into AC current that is fed into the stator.

The Motor and Generator gate signal lines are monitored for open circuits. A POCOC, POAEF, and POAF0 faults are for the Motor and a POBCE, POBCF, and POE10 are for the Generator. The inverter is also monitored for various faults such as over current, current sensor fault, current regulation fault, temperature sensor fault, etc. and will store a POA5F, POA62, POA65, POBFD, POA5D, POA60, or POA63 fault for the Motor and a POA71, POA74, POA77, PODFA, POA6F, POA72, POA75 fault for the Generator upon detection of a malfunction.

#### **Hybrid Powertrain Control Module (HPCM)**

The HPCM monitors itself by using various software monitoring functions. The flash ROM is checked using a checksum calculation, and will set P0605-00 if ROM errors are detected. The EEPROM is emulated in the flash ROM.

The Motor/Generator Control Unit (MGCU) use similar types of RAM/ROM tests. If a fault is detected, a the MGCU will request to store P0A1B-06, P0A1B-49, P060C-41, or P060C-43 and these will be reported by the HPCM.

#### **CAN Communications error**

The HPCM receives information from the ECM (and various other modules) via CAN. If the CAN link fails, the HPCM no longer has torque or engine speed information available. The HPCM will store a U0100-00 fault code if it doesn't receive any more CAN messages from the ECM.

The HPCM receives wheel speed and brake torque request information from the Antilock Brake System (ABS) module. The HPCM will store U0121-00 fault code if communication with the ABS module is lost. The HPCM also receives information from the Battery Energy Control Module (BECM) and a U0111-00 fault will be stored if the communication with the BECM is lost.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 168 OF 207

# **Hybrid Powertrain Control Module**

#### **Hybrid Powertrain Control Module (HPCM) External Inputs**

The HPCM monitors several hardwired inputs from the following sources:

**High Voltage (HV) Interlock (HVIL)** is a switched input that monitors access to the HV DC connectors. If opened, it will cause the HV circuit to be de-energized and the vehicle will be shut down.

Clean Tach Out (CTO) is a signal from the ECM, which is used to determine Engine Speed.

**Electric Motor Position Sensors** are used to measure the angular position of the rotor for the motor and generator.

**Electric Drive Temperature Sensors** are used to monitor hardware component temperatures that are critical to the electric drive system.

**Electric Vehicle (EV) Mode** is a driver-selectable switched input that determines the driver's request for one of the special EV driving modes (PHEV only).

# **High Voltage Interlock**

The HV Interlock (HVIL) monitors access to the high voltage DC connectors. When the cover for the high voltage DC connectors at the ISC is removed, the HVIL circuit is opened, thus causing the HPCM to request the HV contactors to be opened and the vehicle to shutdown.

High Voltage Interlock Open Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0A0A (High Voltage System Interlock Circuit)	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK		
Monitoring Duration	100 msec	

High Voltage Interlock Open check entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Time after vehicle power up	500 msec	none
12V Battery voltage	8.0 V	-
Vehicle Speed	-	< 2 kph

High Voltage Interlock Open check malfunction thresholds:	
HVIL input circuit is OPEN (0 v).	

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 169 OF 207

# **CTO (Clean Tach Out)**

The CTO signal is sent from the ECM to the HPCM. The signal is sent at 10 degrees before Top Dead Center (TDC) for each cylinder. Thus, for a 4 cylinder engine, this translates into the HPCM seeing this signal every 180 degrees of engine rotation. This signal is used to calculate Engine Speed and engine rotational position.

CTO Signal Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0726 (Engine Speed Input Circuit Range/Performance Signal Compare Failure)
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Monitoring Duration	2000 msec

CTO Input Circuit Failure and Out- of- Range check entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Time after vehicle power up	500 msec	none
12V Battery voltage	6.0 V	19.0 V
Engine Speed	50 rad/s	200 rad/s

# CTO Input Circuit Out-of-Range check malfunction thresholds:

ECM Engine Speed (CAN signal) – ECM Engine Speed (based on CTO) | > 50 rad/s for more than 200 msec

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 170 OF 207

# **Electric Motor Position Sensors**

These are used to measure the angular position of the rotor for the motor and generator. They are used by low-level machine control algorithms to calculate current angle. Also, they are used by higher-level control strategies to determine motor and generator rotational speeds and accelerations.

Motor/Gen Rotor Pos	sition Check Operation:
DTCs	P0C17 (Drive Motor Position Sensor Not Learned)
	P0C50 (Drive Motor "A" Position Sensor Circuit "A")
	P0A44 (Drive Motor Position Sensor Circuit Overspeed)
	P0DFC (Generator Position Sensor Circuit Not Learned)
	P0A50 (Generator Position Sensor Circuit)
	P0C50 (Drive Motor "A" Position Sensor Circuit "A")
	P0C51 (Drive Motor "A" Position Sensor Circuit "A" Range/Performance)
	P0A40 (Drive Motor "A" Position Sensor Circuit Range/Performance)
	P0C64 (Generator Position Sensor Circuit "A")
	P0C65 (Generator Position Sensor Circuit "A" Range/Performance)
	P0A4C (Generator Position Sensor Circuit Range/Performance)
	P0C00 (Drive Motor "A" Current Low)
	P0C03 (Drive Motor "B" Current Low)
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Monitoring Duration	

Motor/Gen Rotor Position Circuit Voltage Out-of-Range check entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Time after vehicle power up	50 msec	none	
12V Battery voltage	6.0 V	19.0 V	
Internal Communication Fault Check	PASS		
Gate Drive Circuit Fault Check	PASS		

Motor/Gen Rotor Position Circuit Overspeed entry conditions:				
Motor/Gen Performance General Signal Failure entry conditions:				
Motor/Gen Rotor Position Sensor Not Configured entry conditions:				
Entry Conditions Minimum Maximum				
Time after vehicle power up	700 msec	none		
12V Battery voltage 6.0 V 19.0 V				
Internal Communication Fault Check PASS				

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 171 OF 207

Motor/Gen Performance Circuit Voltage Below Threshold entry conditions		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Time after vehicle power up	50 msec	none
12V Battery voltage	6.0 V	19.0 V
Internal Communication Fault Check	PASS	
Internal Reference Voltages Fault Check	PASS	
Gate Drive Circuit Fault Check	PASS	

Motor/Gen Performance Invalid Serial Data entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Time after vehicle power up	50 msec	none
12V Battery voltage	6.0 V	19.0 V
Internal Communication Fault Check	PASS	
Mot/Gen Speed	> 0 RPM	
Mot/Gen Inverter Over Current Fault	FAIL	

## Motor/Gen Rotor Position Sensor Not Configured malfunction thresholds:

Motor/Generator Resolver Position (stored in EEPROM) is not in acceptable range.

#### Motor/Gen Rotor Position Circuit Overspeed malfunction thresholds:

( Motor measured speed is greater than 1596 for greater than 10 msec OR Motor measured speed is greater than 1544 for greater than 100 msec.

(Generator measured speed is greater than 1596 for greater than 10 msec OR Generator measured speed is greater than 1544 for greater than 100 msec.)

#### Motor/Gen Rotor Position Circuit Voltage Out-of-Range malfunction thresholds:

Motor/Generator Gate Drive Power Supply > 15.08 V OR

Motor/Generator Resolver Power Supply less than 4.7 V OR greater than 5.3 V

## Motor/Gen Drive Motor Performance General Signal Failure malfunction thresholds:

Motor/Generator Resolver hardwired fault line indicates faulted high-> 10ms if RUNNING. OR > 600ms at powerup OR Motor/Generator Resolver hardwired fault line intermittent

#### Motor/Gen Performance Circuit Voltage Below Threshold malfunction thresholds:

Motor/Generator Resolver circuit power supply less than 15.6 V OR greater than 21.5 V

#### Motor/Gen Performance Invalid Serial Data malfunction thresholds:

Motor/Generator Resolver ABZ data differs from serial data by more than 3.6 deg for more than 20 msec.

#### **Motor/Gen Performance**

35A difference between command and feedback for 500ms continuously.

# **Electric Motor HV Current Sensors**

These are used by the MGCU (Motor/Generator Control Unit) to measure the AC current for each phase of the motor and generator. They are used by low-level machine control algorithms to calculate current magnitude and angle. Also, they are used by to insure correct connection of the AC 3-phase circuits to the motor and generator.

Motor/Gen Current Sensor Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0A5F, P0A62, P0A65(Drive Motor "A" Overcurrent)	
	P0A71, P0A74, P0A77 (Generator Current Above Threshold)	
	P0C00 Drive Motor "A" Current Low)	
	P0C03 (Drive Motor "B" Current Low)	
	P0D33 (Variable Voltage Controller Voltage Control Circuit - Current Above Threshold)	
	P0D2D (Drive Motor "A" Inverter Voltage Sensor Circuit)	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Monitoring Duration		

Motor/Gen Inverter Performance Current Above Threshold entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Time after vehicle power up	50 msec	none	
12V Battery voltage	6.0 V	19.0 V	
Internal Reference Voltages Fault Check	PASS		
Internal Inverter Fault Check	PASS		

Motor/Gen Inverter Performance Current Out-Of Range entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Time after vehicle power up	50 msec	none	
12V Battery voltage	6.0 V	19.0 V	
Internal Reference Voltages Fault Check	PASS		
Mot/Gen Operating Mode	Any mode except Terminate		

Variable Voltage Controller Control Circuit Current Above Threshold entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Time after vehicle power up	50 msec	none
12V Battery voltage	6.0 V	19.0 V
Internal Reference Voltages Fault Check	PASS	
VVC Operating Mode	Boost Mode	

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 173 OF 207

#### Motor/Gen Inverter Performance Current Above Threshold malfunction thresholds:

Motor/Gen current sensor over current declared by MGCU:

Motor current magnitude > 600A for 400us OR > 30 A for 200ms at power up

Generator current magnitude > 300A for 400us OR > 15 A for 200ms at powerup

#### Motor/Gen Inverter Performance Current Out-Of Range malfunction thresholds:

Motor/Gen phase circuit fault declared by MGCU - < 5 A for duration of test (100ms) at power up

# Variable Voltage Controller Control Circuit Current Above Threshold malfunction thresholds:

Variable Voltage Controller current measured greater than 300 amps.

# **Inverter DC Voltage Sensor Circuit malfunction thresholds:**

< 0.235V for 100ms at power up

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 174 OF 207

# **Electric Drive Temperature Inputs**

# **Motor/Generator Coil Temperature Sensors**

These temperature sensors are located on the coil windings of the stators of the motor and the generator.

Motor/Generator Coil Te	emperature Sensor check Operation:
DTCs	P0A2C (Drive Motor "A" Temperature Sensor Circuit Low)
	P0A2D (Drive Motor "A" Temperature Sensor Circuit High)
	P0A2B (Drive Motor "A" Temperature Sensor Circuit Range/Performance)
	P0A2F (Drive Motor "A" Over Temperature Unexpected Operation)
	P0A38 (Generator Temperature Sensor Circuit Low)
	P0A39 (Generator Temperature Sensor Circuit High)
	P0A37 (Generator Temperature Sensor Circuit Range/Performance)
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	200 msec

Motor/Generator Coil Temp Circuit Short/Open check entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Time after vehicle power up	2 seconds	none	
12V Battery voltage	6.0 V	19.0 V	
Internal Reference Voltages Fault Check	PASS		

Motor/Generator Coil Temp Over Temp check entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Time after vehicle power up	500 msec	none
12V Battery voltage	6.0V	19.0 V
Sensors OK	Motor Temp Sensor = OK Generator Temp Sensor = OK Oil Temp Sensor = OK	
Internal Reference Voltages Fault Check	PASS	

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 175 OF 207

Motor/Generator Coil Temp In-Range/Performance entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Time after vehicle power up	2 seconds	10 seconds
12V Battery voltage	6.0V	19.0 V
Sensors OK	Motor Temp Sensor = OK Generator Temp Sensor = OK Oil Temp Sensor = OK	
Internal Reference Voltages Fault Check	PASS	
Key-off timer	200 minutes	

#### Motor/Generator Coil Temp Sensor Low check malfunction thresholds:

Motor/Generator Coil Temp input voltage < 0.1 V for more than 32 msec

#### Motor/Generator Coil Temp Sensor High check malfunction thresholds:

Motor/Generator Coil Temp input voltage > 4.8 V for more than 32 msec

# Motor/Generator Coil Temp Sensor Range/Performance check malfunction thresholds:

## Motor Coil Temp (P0A2B)

| Transmission Fluid Temperature - Generator Coil Temp | < 10 deg C AND

| Transmission Fluid Temperature - Motor Coil Temp | > 30 deg C AND

| Motor Coil Temp - Generator Coil Temp | > 30 deg C

#### **Generator Coil Temp (P0A37)**

| Transmission Fluid Temperature - Generator Coil Temp | > 30 deg C | AND

| Transmission Fluid Temperature - Motor Coil Temp | < 10 deg C AND

| Motor Coil Temp - Generator Coil Temp | > 30 deg C

#### Motor/Generator Coil Temp Over Temp check malfunction thresholds:

#### **Motor/Generator Coil Temp over Temp**

Motor/Generator Coil Temp > 140 deg C OR Transmission Oil Temp > 115 deg C

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 176 OF 207

## Transmission Fluid (Oil) Temperature Sensor

The Transmission Fluid Temperature sensor measures the temperature of the transmission fluid.

Trans Fluid Temperature check Operation:		
DTCs P0713 (Transmission Fluid Temp Sensor Circuit High)		
	P0712 (Transmission Fluid Temp Sensor Circuit Low)	
	P0711 (Transmission Fluid Temp Sensor Circuit Range/Performance	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK		
Monitoring Duration	200 msec	

Trans Fluid Temp Circuit Low/High check entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Time after vehicle power up	0.5 seconds	
12V Battery voltage	6.0V	19.0 V
Internal Reference Voltages Fault Check	PASS	

Trans Fluid Temp Signal Range/Performance entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Time after vehicle power up	2 seconds	30 seconds	
12V Battery voltage	6.0V	19.0 V	
Internal Reference Voltages Fault Check	PASS		
Sensors OK	Motor Temp Sensor = OK Generator Temp Sensor = OK Oil Temp Sensor = OK		
Key-off timer	200 minutes		

# Trans Fluid Temp Sensor Circuit High malfunction thresholds:

Transmission Fluid Temp input voltage < 0.1 V for more than 32 msec

# Trans Fluid Temp Sensor Circuit Low malfunction thresholds:

Motor Coil Temperature > 10 deg C AND Generator Coil Temperature > 10 deg C AND

Transmission Fluid Temp input voltage > 4.86 V for more than 32 msec

# Trans Fluid Temp Sensor Range/Performance failure check malfunction thresholds:

| Transmission Fluid Temperature - Generator Coil Temp | > 30 deg C AND

| Transmission Fluid Temperature - Motor Coil Temp | > 30 deg C AND

Motor Coil Temp - Generator Coil Temp | < 10 deg C

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 177 OF 207

#### **Motor/Generator Inverter Temperature Sensors**

These temperature sensors are located on the Motor and Generator Inverters.

Motor/Generator Inverter Temperature Check Operation:			
DTCs	P0AEF (Drive Motor Inverter Temperature Sensor "A" Circuit Low)		
	P0AF0 (Drive Motor Inverter Temperature Sensor "A" Circuit High)		
	P0AEE (Drive Motor Inverter Temperature Sensor "A" Circuit Range/Performance)		
	P0A3C (Drive Motor "A" Inverter Over Temperature)		
	P0BCE (Generator Inverter Temperature Sensor "A" Circuit Low)		
	P0BCF (Generator Inverter Temperature Sensor "A" Circuit High)		
	P0BCD (Generator Inverter Temperature Sensor "A" Circuit Range/Performance)		
Monitor execution	Continuous		
Monitor Sequence	None		
Sensors OK			
Monitoring Duration	Continuous		

Motor/Generator Inverter Temp Sensor Circuit Short/Open check entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Time after vehicle power up	500 msec	none	
12V Battery voltage	6.0V	19.0 V	
Internal Reference Voltages Fault Check	PASS		

Motor/Generator Inverter Temp Sensor Circuit Short/Open check entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Time after vehicle power up	500 msec	none
12V Battery voltage	6.0V	19.0 V
Internal Reference Voltages Fault Check	PASS	
Sensors OK	Motor Inverter Temp sensor = OK Generator Inverter Temp sensor = OK VVC IGBT Temp Sensor = OK VVC Inductor Temp Sensor = OK	

# Motor/Generator Inverter Temp Sensor Short check malfunction thresholds:

Motor Inverter Temp input voltage < 0.78 V

# Motor/Generator Inverter Temp Sensor Open check malfunction thresholds:

Motor Inverter Temp input voltage > 4.56 V

#### Motor/Generator Inverter Temp Over Temp check malfunction thresholds:

Voltage Boost Converter (VVC) IGBT temperature > 139 deg C OR Voltage Boost Converter (VVC) Inductor temperature > 159 deg C OR

Generator Inverter IGBT temperature > 123 deg C OR

Motor Inverter IGBT temperature > 123 deg C

#### Motor/Generator Temp Sensor Range/Performance failure check malfunction thresholds:

| Motor Temperature – Engine Coolant Temp | > 30 deg C AND Engin Off Soak Time > 210 min

## **High Voltage DC/DC Converter**

Inverter High Voltage Sensor Check Operation:		
DTCs	P1A07 - Inverter High Voltage Performance P0C79 - Drive Motor "A" Inverter Voltage Too High	
	P0DA8 - Hybrid/EV Battery Voltage/Drive Motor "A" Inverter Voltage Correlation	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	U0111, P0D2D	
Monitoring Duration	Continuous	

Inverter High Voltage Sensor check entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Time after vehicle power up	500 msec	none	
12V Battery voltage	6.0V	19.0 V	

#### Inverter High Voltage Sensor check malfunction thresholds:

P1A07 - Battery voltage CAN signal < 150V for 100ms OR measured input voltage signal voltage < 150V for 100ms

P0C79 - DC bus voltage measurement voltage > 516V for 10ms.

P0DA8 - Difference between High Voltage Battery voltage sensor and inverter input voltage sensor > 60V OR difference between input/output inverter voltage sensors > 60V.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 179 OF 207

Inverter DC/DC Converter Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0CA3 - DCDC Converter Step Up Voltage Performance	
	P0A11 – DCDC Converter Enable Circuit Open	
	P0A94 - DC/DC Converter Performance	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	P06A6, P0562, P1A07	
Monitoring Duration	Continuous	

Inverter DC/DC Converter check entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Time after vehicle power up	500 msec	none	
12V Battery voltage	6.0V	19.0 V	

#### **Inverter DC/DC Converter check malfunction thresholds:**

#### P0CA3:

Input voltage sensor reading below < 0.235V for 10 msec. OR

Current sensor reading > 300 Amps for 1 sec. OR

Motor/generator torque de-rate for voltage protection > 50% for 1 sec. OR

Voltage difference across Variable Voltage Converter > 30 V for 100 msec. during self-test OR

Variable Voltage Controller upper switch hardware failure for >200 usec.

#### P0A11:

Variable Voltage Controller Gate Drive power supply > 15.3V, < 0.1V OR

Variable Voltage Controller upper switch temperature sensor fault > 4.55V, < 0.779V OR

Variable Voltage Controller lower switch temperature sensor fault > 4.55V, < 0.779V OR

Variable Voltage Controller lower switch hardware failure for >200 usec

Variable Voltage Controller inductor current sensor offset > 15A at power-up

Variable Voltage Controller inductor current sensor voltage < 4.5V or > 6.0V

#### P0A94:

Calculated Inductor current is > 50 A different from measured current in controlled operating conditions for > 4 sec.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 180 OF 207

DC-DC Converter Temperature Sensor Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0C39 - DC-DC Converter Temperature Sensor Range Performance A	
	P0C3E - DC-DC Converter Temperature Sensor Range Performance B	
	P0E59 - DC-DC Converter Temperature Sensor Range Performance C	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	P06A6, P2610	
Monitoring Duration	Continuous	

DC-DC Converter Temperature Sensor check entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Time after vehicle power up	500 msec	none	
12V Battery voltage	6.0V	19.0 V	

# DC-DC Converter Temperature Sensor check malfunction thresholds:

## P0E59:

Inductor temperature sensor voltage < 0.067V, > 4.86V OR

Inductor Overtemperature conditions > 165 deg C for 1 sec OR

Inductor temperature differs from ECT > 30 deg C after a 180 min engine off soak time.

## P0C39/P0C3E:

Power Electronics temperature differs from ECT > 30 deg C after a 180 min engine off soak time.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 181 OF 207

## **EV Mode Input Switch** (PHEV only)

Electric Vehicle (EV) Mode is driver-selectable switched input that determines the driver's request for one of the three EV driving modes: *Auto* – this is normal PHEV operation (charge depleting) which attempts to minimize use of internal combustion engine operation until PHEV battery is mostly depleted then reverts to conventional hybrid (charge sustaining) operation, *EV Now* – this mode forces the internal combustion engine off under all non-faulted driving conditions, and *EV Later* – this mode forces the vehicle into conventional hybrid (charge sustaining) to allow a reserve of battery energy to be used later once driver selects Auto mode again.

EV (transmission) Mode Check Operation:			
DTCs	P071A (Transmission Mode Switch "A" Circuit intermittent)		
	P071B (Transmission Mode Switch "A" Circuit Low)		
Monitor execution	Continuous		
Monitor Sequence	None		
Sensors OK			
Monitoring Duration	Continuous		

EV (transmission) Mode Check Circuit check entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Time after vehicle power up	500 msec	none	
12V Battery voltage	6.0V	19.0 V	

## EV (transmission) Mode Check Circuit intermittent check malfunction thresholds:

EV Switch transitions low to high more than 10 times in 300 msec.

## EV (transmission) Mode Check Circuit Low malfunction thresholds:

EV Switch input remains low for more than 30 seconds.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 182 OF 207

# **Transmission Range Sensor Inputs**

Transmission Range Sensor Check Operation:			
DTCs	P2800 – Transmission Range Sensor B Circuit (PRNDL input)		
	P2806 - Transmission Range Sensor Alignment		
Monitor execution	continuous		
Monitor Sequence	None		
Sensors OK	not applicable		
Monitoring Duration	< 1 seconds to register a malfunction		

Transmission range sensor check malfunction thresholds:					
TR Sensor	Park	Reverse	Neutral	Drive	Low
TR_A1 (VOLTS	3.84 - 4.77	2.58 - 3.31	1.82 - 2.56	0.97 - 1.79	0.20 - 0.92
TR_A2 (VOLTS 0.20 - 1.08 1.56 - 2.25 2.26 - 2.96 2.97 - 3.74 3.77 - 4.45					

## Transmission range sensor check malfunction thresholds:

P20800: INVALID gear position signal received over CAN from ECM.

P2806: Mechanical Parking Pawl failure. Motor rotates > 9 radians when parking pawl is expected to be engaged in transaxle.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 183 OF 207

## **Transmission Auxiliary Oil Pump**

The transmission fluid pump is an internal pump bolted to the transmission case. The transmission fluid pump is turned by the input shaft and circulates transmission fluid through the transmission for lubrication and through an oil-to-air cooler mounted in the front of the radiator for transmission cooling. The transmission fluid pump only operates when the engine is running.

PHEVs also have an electric auxiliary transmission fluid pump to circulate the transmission fluid during extended drive times without engine charging. The auxiliary transmission fluid pump is controlled by the TCM.

Transmission Auxili	ary Oil Pump Check Operation:
DTCs	P175A - Transmission Fluid Over Temperature Condition - Electric Transmission Fluid Pump Disabled
	P0B0D - Electric/Auxiliary Transmission Fluid Pump Motor Control Module
	P0C27 - Electric/Auxiliary Transmission Fluid Pump "A" Motor Current Low
	P0C28 - Electric/Auxiliary Transmission Fluid Pump "A" Motor Current High
	P0C29 - Electric/Auxiliary Transmission Fluid Pump "A" Driver Circuit Performance
	P0C2A - Electric/Auxiliary Transmission Fluid Pump "A" Motor Stalled
	P0C2C - Electric Transmission Fluid Pump Control Module Feedback Signal Range/Performance
	P0C2D - Electric Transmission Fluid Pump Control Module Feedback Signal Low
	P0C2E - Electric Transmission Fluid Pump Control Module Feedback Signal High
	P2796 - Electric Transmission Fluid Pump Control Circuit
Monitor execution	continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	not applicable
Monitoring Duration	< 1 seconds to register a malfunction

Transmission Auxiliary Oil Pump check entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Ambient Temperature	10 deg C		
12V Battery voltage	6.0V	19.0 V	

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 184 OF 207

## Transmission Auxiliary Oil Pump check malfunction thresholds:

P175A: TAOP circuit board temperature > 130 deg C for 3 sec.

P0B0D: TAOP speed is > 105% or < 95% of commanded speed for 3 sec

P0C27: TAOP current is < 0.5 Amps at 1000rpm to <1.2 Amps at 4000rpm. For 3 sec

P0C28: TAOP current is > 12.5 Amps for 3 sec

P0C29: TAOP current and speed meet conditions for P0B0D and either P0C27 or P0C28 for 3 sec.

P0C2A: Pump speed =0 when commanded non-zero for 3 sec, OR circuit board temp > 135 deg C OR Over-current > 12.5 Amps for > 20 sec. OR Pump supplied voltage < 6.0 Volts or > 18.0 Volts for 325 ms.

P0C2C: Duty cycle of PWM signal measured by TAOP outside the 10 defined zones of operation > 3.0 sec.

P0C2D: Duty cycle of PWM signal measured from TAOP is < 9 % duty cycle for 3 seconds.

P0C2E: Duty cycle of PWM signal measured from TAOP is > 91 % duty cycle for 3 seconds.

P2796: PWM speed command signal on the separate control circuit < 80 Hz or > 120 Hz for 3 sec.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 185 OF 207

# **Motor Electronics Coolant Pump Control Circuit**

Motor Electronics Coolant Pump Control Circuit Check Operation:		
DTCs	P0A05 (Motor Electronics Coolant Pump Control Circuit / Open	
	P0A06 (Motor Electronics Coolant Pump (MECP) Control Circuit Low)	
	P0A07 (Motor Electronics Coolant Pump (MECP) Control Circuit High)	
	P0C73 (Motor Electronics Coolant Pump "A" Control Performance)	
	P0E4F (Motor Electronics Coolant Pump "A" intermittent / erratic)	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK		
Monitoring Duration	5 sec	

Motor Electronics Coolant Pump Control Circuit check entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Time after vehicle power up	500 msec	none	
12V Battery voltage	6.0V	19.0 V	

# **Motor Electronics Coolant Pump Control Circuit check malfunction thresholds:**

P0A05 - No communication received from pump > 9.25 sec

P0A06 - MECP output driver faulted for > 5 sec

P0A07 - MECP output driver faulted (overcurrent) for > 0.25 sec

P0C73 – communication received from pump that a confirmed fault exists > 1.25 sec OR

P0E4F - communication received from pump outside of expected frequency/duty cycle > 1 sec.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 186 OF 207

# **General System Voltage Checks**

General System Voltage Check Operation:			
DTCs	P0560 – System Voltage		
	P0562 – System Voltage Low		
	P0563 – System Voltage High		
	P06A6 - Sensor Reference Voltage "A" Circuit Range/Performance		
	P06A7 - Sensor Reference Voltage "B" Circuit Range/Performance		
	P06B1 - Sensor Power Supply "A" Circuit Low		
	P06B2 - Sensor Power Supply "A" Circuit High		
	P0A23 – Generator Torque Sensor Circuit Range/Performance		
	P0A18 – Motor Torque Sensor Circuit Range/Performance		
	P1633 - Keep Alive Power Voltage Too Low		
Monitor execution	Continuous		
Monitor Sequence	None		
Sensors OK			
Monitoring Duration	< 1 sec		

General System Voltage Check entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Time after vehicle power up	500 msec	none
12V Battery voltage	6.0V	19.0 V

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 187 OF 207

## **General System Voltage check malfunction thresholds:**

#### P0560:

- KAPWR voltage out of range (x > 19.0V) OR (x < 5.95V)
- KAPWR voltage differs from PSR voltage > 4.5V

#### P0562:

- Battery voltage when vehicle is running and in a torque producing state < 8.2V</li>
- Battery voltage anytime module is powered < 6.0V</li>

## P0563:

Battery voltage too high> 19.0V

#### P06A6:

• Internal processor power supply (x > 2.64V) OR (x < 2.37V)

#### P06A7:

- 5V power supply out of range (4.75V > x) OR (x > 5.25V)
- 3.3V power supply out of range (3.46V < x) OR (x < 3.13V)
- 1.5 V power supply out of range (1.57V < x) OR (x < 1.42V)

#### P06B1:

• Temperature sensor power supply (x < 4.5V)

#### P06B2:

• Temperature sensor power supply (x > 6.0V)

#### P0A23:

• Generator sensor reference voltage out of range > 6V or < 4.50V for 500ms.

## P0A18:

• Motor current sensor reference voltage out of range > 6V or < 4.50V for 500ms.

#### P1633

• Voltage below 6.0V for 20 seconds, or 5 seconds during module self-test.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 188 OF 207

## **Internal HPCM ECU Checks**

Internal ECU Check	Operation:
DTCs	P0600 – Serial Communication Link
	P0603 - Internal Control Module Keep Alive Memory (KAM) Error
	P0604 - Internal Control Module Random Access Memory (RAM) Error
	P0605 - Internal Control Module Read Only Memory (ROM) Error
	P0607 - Internal Control Module Read Only Memory (ROM) Error
	P060A – Internal Control Module Monitoring Processor
	P060B - Internal Control Module A/D Processing Performance
	P060C - Internal Control Module Main Processor Performance
	P0613 – TCM Processor
	P061A - Internal Control Module Torque Performance
	P06B8 - Internal Control Module Non-Volatile Random Access Memory (NVRAM) Error
	P0A1D - Hybrid/EV Powertrain Control Module "A"
	P1A08 - Generator Mode Signal
	P1A0C – Engine Failed To Start (non-MIL)
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Sensors OK	
Monitoring Duration	< 1 sec

## **Internal ECU Check malfunction thresholds:**

P0600 – SPI message fault (checksum/header/timing/frame)

P0603 - KAM checksum error

P0604 – RAM checksum error

P0605 – ROM checksum error

P0607 - Error detected in CPU instruction test

P060A – Error detected in Motor Control Unit (RAM/ROM/Communications/Safety Monitor)

P060B – A/D redundant check error compared with main software A/D

P060C - CAN network data errors (torque/motor speed/pedal/gear/torque)

P0613 – Processor resets, micro software mismatch, torque validity

P061A - Excess torque detected

P06B8 - NVRAM read/write failure

P0A1D - Inter-processor Serial Communication failure

P1A08 - Generator mode command invalid for Neutral Gear operation when vehicle speed < 2 kph and gear position is NEUTRAL for < 1 sec.

P1A0C - No response to engine start request from ECM for >25 sec after initial start request

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 189 OF 207

## **General Hybrid System**

General System Chec	General System Check Operation:	
DTCs	P0A1A - Generator Control Module	
	P0A1B - Drive Motor "A" Control Module	
	P1920 – Engine Speed Signal	
	P1A13 - Hybrid Powertrain Control Module - Regenerative Braking Disabled	
	P1A1B - Brake System Control Module - Forced Engine Running	
	U0100 - Lost Communication With ECM / PCM "A"	
	U0121 - Lost Communication With Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) Control Module	
	U0164 - Lost Communication With HVAC Control Module	
	U0300 - Internal Control Module Software Incompatibility	
	U0401 - Invalid Data Received from ECM/PCM "A"	
	U0412 - Invalid Data Received from Battery Energy Control Module "A"	
	U0418 - Invalid Data Received from Brake System Control Module "A"	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Sensors OK	P0A23, P0A92, P0A7A, P0C64 for P0A1A	
	P1A18, P0A90, P0A78,P0C50 for P1A1B	
Monitoring Duration	Continuous	

## **General System Check malfunction thresholds:**

P0A1A - Generator Torque estimate error, difference between Generator torque estimate and command > 40Nm for 550 ms or Total Torque estimate error, difference between Total torque command and Total torque > 800Nm more than demand for > 500ms.

P0A1B - Motor Torque Estimate Error, Difference between Motor torque estimate and command > 60Nm for 550 ms or Total Torque estimate error, Difference between Total torque command and Total torque estimate > 800Nm more than demand for > 500ms.

P1920 - Difference between engine speed CAN signal and internal engine speed calculation > 500 rpm for 500 ms OR > 550rpm for 1000 ms.

P1A13 - Regenerative Braking Disabled by request of Brake System Control Module due to regenerative braking system fault.

P1A1B – Forced Engine Running by request of Brake System Control Module due to regenerative braking system fault.

U0100 – Lost Communication with PCM > 1 sec.

U0121 - Lost Communication with ABS module > 1 sec.

U0164 - Lost Communication with HVAC module > 1 sec.

U0300 - Internal HPCM monitor software version mismatch.

U0401 - Invalid Data Received from ECM/PCM "A"

U0412 - Invalid Data Received from Battery Energy Control Module "A"

U0418 - Invalid Data Received from Brake System Control Module "A"

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 190 OF 207

## ABS / Brake System

## **Brake System Overview**

The brake system on HEV and PHEV vehicles plays a vital role in the regenerative braking function, first as the primary measurement of the driver's requested braking torque, and the arbitration of how that braking torque will be delivered, as a combination of powertrain regenerative braking torque and conventional friction based torque at the brake pads/calipers. The ABS module is responsible for maintaining overall vehicle stability during braking, traction control maneuvers, and ABS events, and may limit regenerative braking torque during any event to maintain vehicle stability.

The overall amount of regenerative braking will impact the fuel economy of an HEV or PHEV vehicle. Certain failure modes of the regenerative braking system can limit regenerative braking torque for the duration of a drive cycle. In a PHEV, this affects the all-electric range of the vehicle, as regenerative braking is used to recapture kinetic energy from the vehicle while braking. This reduction in EV range of a PHEV vehicle makes the regenerative braking function an emissions control device, and therefore any component in the braking system that can affect regenerative braking on a PHEV will have an OBD monitor. In Ford's PHEV's, the brake module contains the diagnostic software and monitors for these components, and the summary of those monitors is reported to the HPCM, which handles the OBD reporting for the ABS module (which does not have a diagnostic identifier in the OBD range). In this manner, the HPCM will act as the gateway for all brake system OBD information.

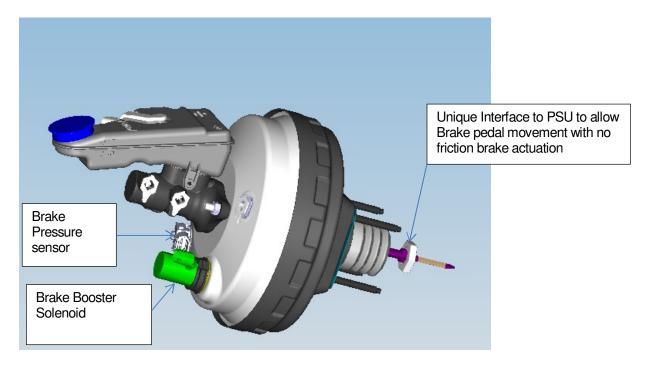
## **Brake System Architecture**

The brake system on Ford's current generation of electrified vehicles consists of 4 major components:

- ACU Actuation Control Unit
- ICU Integrated Control Unit
- PSU Pedal simulator Unit
- EVP Electric Vacuum Pump

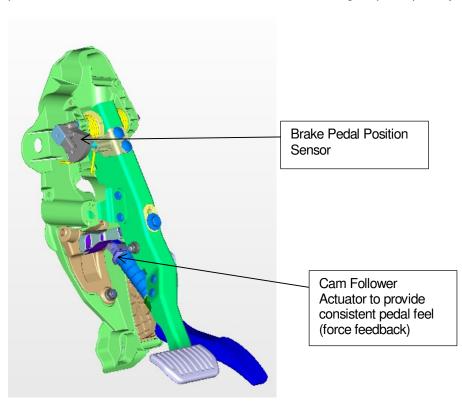
The ACU resembles a conventional vehicles brake vacuum booster, but has unique sensors and a unique interface to the PSU (Pedal Simulator Unit). This unique interface allows for some brake pedal movement without engaging the mechanical vacuum-assisted brakes. This is critical to allow for "series" regenerative braking, wherein all vehicle deceleration torque can be provided by the powertrain up to a predetermined level without any conventional friction braking being employed. This is important for maximizing fuel economy and energy recapture during normal braking events. This system also allows for more direct driver control of braking during some failure modes, as the conventional friction braking system is always available regardless of any control module function.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 191 OF 207



The ACU consists of a conventional vacuum booster, sensors, a master cylinder, and fluid reservoir.

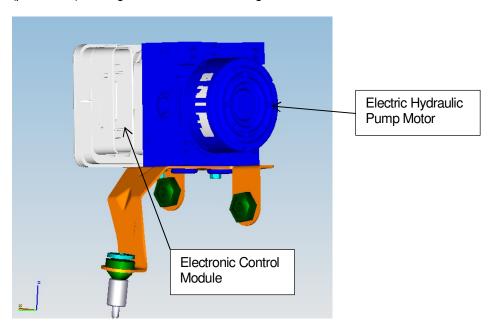
The PSU (Pedal Simulator Unit) is a modified brake pedal assembly that has several key features to enable smooth regenerative braking and reliable application of friction braking when necessary. The pedal feel simulator always provides pedal feedback to the driver through a consistent pedal force, by using a cam-follower mechanism that is independent of the type of braking being used. The PSU has the mechanism to allow a fixed amount of brake pedal movement without the application of any friction braking, requiring the driver to push through a gap in order to actuate the friction braking via the ACU discussed above. The PSU also incorporates sensors to detect the amount of brake pedal movement, which is then translated into a driver braking torque request by the ICU.



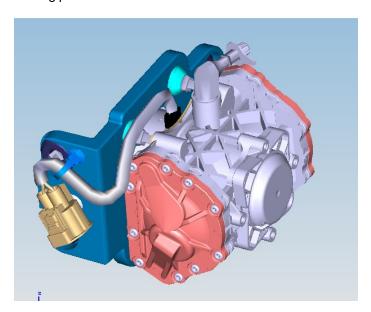
FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 192 OF 207

The PSU also incorporates sensors to detect the amount of brake pedal movement, which is then translated into a driver braking torque request by the ICU.

The ICU consists of an electronic control unit, and an electric fluid pump that is used in ABS (anti-lock braking), traction control, and failure mode situations to deliver high pressure brake fluid to the brake calipers at each wheel. This unit is very similar to a conventional vehicle's ABS module in design and construction. The software is modified to interface with the other components of the brake system, reading the unique sensors, controlling the unique actuators, and interfacing with the powertrain control modules to continuously vary the amount of regenerative (powertrain) braking allowed under all driving conditions.



The Electric Vacuum Pump (EVP) is controlled by the ICU, and is designed to maintain the vacuum level in the ACU to meet all braking requirements. In HEV and PHEV vehicles, the engine is not always running, so can not be depended on to provide sufficient vacuum for the ACU in normal driving. This is especially true in PHEV vehicles where the engine may not be started for an entire drive cycle up to ~20 miles. Thus, the EVP is used as the primary vacuum source for the ACU, and is controlled by the braking system. In certain EVP failure modes, the powertrain will revert to a more conventional mode of operation to reliably deliver required vacuum levels in order to maintain braking performance.



FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 193 OF 207

## **Braking System External Inputs**

The ABS module monitors several hardwired inputs from the following sources:

**Brake pedal angle sensor** is used to calculate the amount of total braking torque that is being requested by the driver. This sensor has several monitors associated with it, including: out-of-range failures, checksum failures, signal comparison failures (2 sensor tracks), supply voltage failures, amplitude and frequency out of range failures.

Brake Pedal Angle sensor Check Operation:	
DTCs	P057B, P05DC, P057E, C056D, C056E, P05E0, P057C, P057D, P057A, P05DD, P05DE, P05DB
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Monitoring Duration	100 msec

Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Bias/adjustment (P057B) check entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Ignition	On	On
Sensors OK	Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Circuit 1 and Circuit 2 signal both in-range, sensor supply voltage OK.	-
Vehicle Speed	20 kph	-

## Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Bias/adjustment (P057B) check malfunction thresholds:

Signal steady state bias/offset at zero point > 7.4% for 10msec

Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Checksum (P05DC) check entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Ignition	On	On

# Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Checksum (P05DC) check malfunction thresholds:

Checksum EEPROM value stored does not match calculated value for 10ms

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 194 OF 207

Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Signal Compare (P057E) check entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Ignition	On	On
Time after Power On	1.8 sec	-
Sensors OK	Brake Pedal angle sensor supply voltage in range	-

# Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Signal Compare (P057E) check malfunction thresholds:

6% deviation between outputs of Sensor 1 and Sensor2 for more than 150ms.

Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Supply Voltage (C056D, C056E) check entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Ignition	On	On

# Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Supply Voltage (C056D, C056E) check malfunction thresholds:

Power supply voltage > 5.13V OR < 4.87V for 50msec

Brake Pedal Angle Sensor A/B correction (P05E0) check entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Ignition	On	On
Other DTC's Also SET	P057C, OR P057D, OR P057A, OR P05DD, OR P05DE, OR P05DB	

## Brake Pedal Angle Sensor A/B correction (P05E0) check malfunction thresholds:

Signal comparison between angle measurement and brake on/off switch indication – if on/off switch is "on" with less than 1mm of brake angle measured, for more than 2.5 seconds, fault will trigger.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 195 OF 207

Brake Pedal Angle Sensor A and B Circuit checks (P057C, P057D, P057A, P05DD, P05DE, P05DB) check entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Ignition	On	On
Other DTC's Also SET	P05E0	

# Brake Pedal Angle Sensor A and B Circuit checks (P057C, P057D, P057A, P05DD, P05DE, P05DB) check malfunction thresholds:

Test fails if Brake pedal angle from sensor A or B is 0% or 100% for 100ms, or PWM frequency or duty cycles are outside of acceptable ranges (8.3 to 91.7% duty cycle, and period between 1735-2358 microseconds)

**Vacuum level sensors** are used to monitor the vacuum being provided by the engine and vacuum pump, and is used to control the state of the electric vacuum pump. Failure modes sensed and detected include vacuum supply low, and vacuum leak detection.

Vacuum Supply Check Operation:	
DTCs	P050F
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Monitoring Duration	100 msec

Vaccum Supply (P050F) entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Ignition State	On	
No Supply voltage failures – DTCs C1B14		

## Vaccum Supply (P050F) check malfunction thresholds:

If the vacuum rate of change > 500 mbar/sec, for at least 100msec, and the vacuum level is < -40mbar for 600msec, fault will be set.

**Brake Pressure Sensors** – are used to monitor the pressure of fluid in the ACU and ECU, and at individual wheels. Diagnostics for the two pressure sensors include range/performance, missing calibration data, intermittent sensor readings, comparison tests between the two sensors, and sensor supply voltage monitoring.

Check Operation:	
DTCs	C053D, C0560, C056B, C0541
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Monitoring Duration	100 msec

Brake Pressure Sensor A Range/Performance Check (C053D) entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Ignition State	On	
Time after module Powerup	> 1.8 Sec	
Battery Voltage	> 8.3 V	
Other faults active — C0541 OR C0560 — (Brake pressure sensor B faults)		

## Brake Pressure Sensor A Range/Performance check malfunction thresholds (any of below)

Pressure sensor offsets outside of acceptable range - P1 sensor offset > 16bar, or < -16 bar. P2 sensor offset > 17 bar or < -50 bar for more than 10msec.

More than 10 unexpected pressure sensor resets occur

Sensor reset duration exceeds 70ms

Sensor initialization duration exceeds 70ms

Writing sensor values to EEPROM memory storage takes longer than 500ms

Pressure sensor mode does not match expected mode longer than 70ms

Sensor internal failure flag received for more than 70ms

Pressure sensor supply voltage exceeds 7.0V for 50msec.

P1/P2 sensors do not agree for 100ms – pressure readings differ by more than 50 bar.

P1 or P2 sensors out of range high or low. ( > 275 bar or < -15 bar)

Temperature sensors in pressure sensors out of range (> 155 degC or < -55degC)

T1 / T2 (temperature sensors) read more than 10degC different for 100ms

T1 or T2 signal gradient > 11K / 100ms

Brake Pressure Sensor A – Missing calibration (C0560) entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Ignition State	On	
Time after module Powerup	> 1.8 Sec	
No supply Voltage failure (C056A)		
C0541 or C053D is set – other brake pressure sensor faults are present		

# Brake Pressure Sensor A – Missing calibration (C0560) check malfunction thresholds:

Checksum comparison between sensor and ECU memory not equal for 150msec.

Sensor ID mismatch between sensor data and ECU memory for 70 ms.

Brake Pressure Sensor A – Intermittent/Erratic (C056B) entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Ignition State	On	
No supply Voltage failure (C056A)		
C0541 or C053D is set – other brake pressure sensor faults are present		

# Brake Pressure Sensor A – Intermittent/Erratic (C056B) check malfunction thresholds:

Checksum failure on data from sensor for 70msec.

Commanded control signal not observed at pressure sensor for 70 ms.

Brake Pressure Sensor B Range/Performance Check (C0541) entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Ignition State	On	
Time after module Powerup	> 1.8 Sec	
Battery Voltage	> 8.3 V	
Other faults active - C053D OR C0560 - (Brake pressure sensor A faults)		

# Brake Pressure Sensor B Range/Performance Check (C0541) check malfunction thresholds (any of below)

Pressure sensor offsets outside of acceptable range - P1 sensor offset > 16bar, or < -16 bar. P2 sensor offset > 17 bar or < -50 bar for more than 10msec.

More than 10 unexpected pressure sensor resets occur

Sensor reset duration exceeds 70ms

Sensor initialization duration exceeds 70ms

Writing sensor values to EEPROM memory storage takes longer than 500ms

Pressure sensor mode does not match expected mode longer than 70ms

Sensor internal failure flag received for more than 70ms

Pressure sensor supply voltage exceeds 7.0V for 50msec.

P1/P2 sensors do not agree for 100ms – pressure readings differ by more than 50 bar.

P1 or P2 sensors out of range high or low. ( > 275 bar or < -15 bar)

**12V system power** – is monitored to determine if a sufficient level of 12V power is present to allow normal system function.

ABS Control Module System Voltage Low/High Check Operation:	
DTCs	C0564, C0565
Monitor execution Continuous	
Monitor Sequence None	
Monitoring Duration 100 msec	

ABS Control Module System Voltage Low/High entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions Minimum Maximum			
Ignition State	On		

# ABS Control Module System Voltage Low/High check malfunction thresholds:

Battery voltage supplied is outside of acceptable range – (9.0V – 16.9V)

## **Brake System Control Module Outputs**

**Vaccum pump control circuits** are used to activate and control the electric vacuum pump to provide the required amount of vacuum to the ACU. Diagnostics on these control circuits include general electrical faults such as short to ground or open circuit (general electrical fault).

Vacuum pump control circuits Check Operation:	
DTCs	P258B, P258A, P25EE
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Monitoring Duration	100 msec

Vaccum pump Control circuit A Range/performance (P258B) entry conditions:				
Entry Conditions Minimum Maximum				
Ignition State	On			

## Vaccum pump Control circuit A Range/performance (P258B)check malfunction thresholds:

Vacuum pump monitoring line voltage out of range with relay commanded open, outside of 1.3V to 5.0V, or if monitoring line voltage is < 250mV with relay commanded closed for 1 sec.

Vaccum pump Control circuit A Open (P258A) entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Ignition State	On	
Vacuum Pump Relay Line State	Open	-

## Vaccum pump Control circuit A Open (P258A) check malfunction thresholds:

Vacuum pump monitoring line voltage out of range with relay commanded open, outside of 1.3V to 5.0V for 100msec.

Vaccum pump Control circuit B Open (P25EE) entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions Minimum Maximum			
Ignition State	On		
Vacuum Pump Relay Line State	Closed	-	

## Vaccum pump Control circuit B Open (P25EE) check malfunction thresholds:

Vacuum pump monitoring line voltage < 250mV for 1 second.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 200 OF 207

ABS Pump Motor Control Circuits are used to diagnose the function of the electric pump-motor that provides hydraulic pressure to the brake system in certain operation modes (ABS, Traction Control), as well as certain failure modes (loss of vacuum pump, or loss of vacuum). These diagnostics include general circuit checks such as short to ground/battery, circuit open, actuator stuck (motor stuck)

ABS pump motor control circuit Check Operation:	
DTCs	C052E, C052D, C052C, C052B
Monitor execution	Continuous
Monitor Sequence	None
Monitoring Duration	100 msec

ABS pump motor control circuit short to ground (C052E) entry conditions:		
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum
Motor Commanded On time	1ms	
Other DTC's Set concurrently	C0021, OR C0566, OR C0567, OR C0568, OR C0569	-

# ABS pump motor control circuit short to ground (C052E) check malfunction thresholds:

Voltage drop across solid state pump switch is > 0.4V, measured 3 times after a motor reset. Motor reset will occur if voltage drop persists for 220 ms.

ABS pump motor control circuit high (C052D) entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Time elapsed since module powerup	> 1.8 sec		
Motor Commanded Off time	1ms		
Other DTC's Set concurrently	C0021, OR C0566, OR C0567, OR C0568, OR C0569	-	
No overvoltage or undervoltage faults set (C0564, C0565)			

# ABS pump motor control circuit high (C052D ) check malfunction thresholds:

Voltage at pump motor too high when the pump motor is deactivated (> 0.93 V) for 3 seconds.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 201 OF 207

ABS pump motor control circuit Open (C052C) entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Battery voltage applied	> 9 Volts		
Motor Commanded Off/On time	1ms		
Other DTC's Set concurrently	C0021, OR C0566, OR C0567, OR C0568, OR C0569	-	

# ABS pump motor control range/performance (C052B) check malfunction thresholds:

Voltage is outside of expected range when pump motor is on or off. If pump motor is off, voltage below 6 V for 1.8 sec will trigger fault, if pump motor is ON, voltage below 7.3V for 1.8 sec will trigger.

ABS pump motor control range/performance (C052B) entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Ignition state	On		
Other DTC's Set concurrently	C0021, OR C0566, OR C0567, OR C0568, OR C0569	-	

# ABS pump motor control circuit open (C052C ) check malfunction thresholds:

Voltage at pump after the end of a pump motor activation < 930mV for 1.8 sec.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 202 OF 207

**Brake Booster Solenoid** –The diagnostics for this solenoid include general circuit faults such as short to ground/power and open circuit detections, as well as a range/performance diagnostic.

Brake Booster Solenoid Check Operation:		
DTCs	C0569, C0567, C0568,	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Monitoring Duration	100 msec	

Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance (C0569) entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Ignition state	On		
Brake Booster State	Not Commanded		
Booster low side driver state	Commanded on for > 2msec		
Other DTC's Set concurrently	C052E, OR C052D, OR C052C, or C052B – ABS pump motor faults	-	

## Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance (C0569) check malfunction thresholds:

Voltage drop across low side of solenoid > 2 volts with high side driver commanded off for 80 msec.

Booster current with test pulse < 160mA with high side driver commanded ON for 80msec.

Supply voltage < 3.0V with high side driver state commanded ON for 80 msec

Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low (C0567) entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Ignition state	On		
Booster high-side driver state	Commanded OFF		
Booster low-side driver state	Commanded OFF		
Other DTC's Set concurrently	C052E, OR C052D, OR C052C, or C052B – ABS pump motor faults	-	

# Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low (C0567) check malfunction thresholds:

Supply voltage < 3.0V for 380 msec

Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High (C0568) entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Booster high-side driver state	Commanded OFF		
Booster low-side driver state	Commanded OFF		
Other DTC's Set concurrently	C052E, OR C052D, OR C052C, or C052B – ABS pump motor faults	-	

# Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High (C0568) check malfunction thresholds:

Supply voltage > 3.0V for 80 msec

**Traction Control System Valves** – are used to control the application of high pressure fluid to each wheel, and are used during traction control events, including ABS.

Traction Control System Control channel A/B Valve 1/2 Check Operation:		
DTCs	C0001, C0002, C0003, C0004	
Monitor execution	Continuous	
Monitor Sequence	None	
Monitoring Duration	100 msec	

Traction Control System Control channel A/B Valve 1/2 entry conditions:			
Entry Conditions	Minimum	Maximum	
Ignition state	On		
Other DTC's Set concurrently	C0021, OR C0566, OR C0567, OR C0568, OR C0569	-	

## Traction Control System Control channel A/B Valve 1/2 check malfunction thresholds:

The ECU will provide a passive test pulse while the valve is not actuated by the control system. The ECU then checks the voltage drop across the low side driver during the valve actuation. If that voltage drop is less than 2.0V for 80msec, fault is detected.

#### **CAN Communications error**

The Brake System Control Module receives information from the ECM, HPCM (and various other modules) via CAN. If the CAN link fails, the brake system no longer has wheel torque or driver acceleration torque information available. The brake system will store a U0293 DTC for loss of communication with the HPCM, and a U0100 DTC for loss of communication with the ECM. Furthermore, if one of those critical signals is marked as "invalid" or "unknown" or "faulted" by the sending module, the brake system will set a U0594 DTC for invalid information from the HPCM, or a U0401 DTC for invalid communication from the ECM.

## DTC Mapping between HPCM (SOBDMC) and ABS Module for PHEV vehicles:

The HPCM acts as the gateway for all ABS module (brake system) OBD diagnostics that affect the regenerative braking function on PHEVs. To meet OBD error code requirements, some of the DTC numbers are different between the ABS module DTC and the HPCM DTC. The following table relates corresponding DTC's between the two modules. In each case, the pairs of DTC's will have identical meaning. If you see one of these DTC's in that control module, the other module should have the corresponding DTC, unless it was cleared with a service tool.

Name Component/System		ABS Fault Code	HPCM Fault Code	
ABS Control Module Performance	Control Module	U3000	C0563	
Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Signal Bias Level Out of Range / Zero Adjustment Failure	Brake Pedal Angle Sensor	C100A	P057B	
Brake Pedal Angle Sensor General Checksum Failure	Brake Pedal Angle Sensor	C100A	P05DC	
Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Signal Compare Failure	Brake Pedal Angle Sensor	C100A	P057E	
Brake Pedal Position Sensor Supply Voltage Circuit Low	Brake Pedal Angle Sensor	C100F	C056D	
Brake Pedal Position Sensor Supply Voltage Circuit High	Brake Pedal Angle Sensor	C100F	C056E	
Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Signal Plausibility Failure	Brake Pedal Angle Sensor	C100A	P05E0	
Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Circuit 1 Signal Amplitude < Minimum	Brake Pedal Angle Sensor	C100D	P057C	
Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Circuit 1 Signal Amplitude > Maximum	Brake Pedal Angle Sensor	C100D	P057D	
Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Circuit 1 Signal Frequency Incorrect	Brake Pedal Angle Sensor	C100D	P057A	
Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Circuit 2 Signal Amplitude < Minimum	Brake Pedal Angle Sensor	C100E	P05DD	
Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Circuit 2 Signal Amplitude > Maximum	Brake Pedal Angle Sensor	C100E	P05DE	
Brake Pedal Angle Sensor Circuit 2 Signal Frequency Incorrect	Brake Pedal Angle Sensor	C100E	P05DB	
ADS Control Model to Desferonce	Control Module Configuration Memory	112200	605.63	
ABS Control Module Performance	Corrupt	U2200	C0563	
ABS Control Module Communication Bus Off	High Speed CAN Communication Bus	U0001	U1025	
ABS Control Module Lost Communication with Hybrid/EV Powertrain Control Module	Lost Communication with Hybrid/EV Powertrain Control Module	U0293	U1026	
ABS Control Module Lost Communication With ECM/PCM "A"	Lost Communication With ECM/PCM "A"	U0100	U1027	
ABS Control Module Received Invalid Data from ECM/PCM "A"	Invalid Data Received from ECM/PCM A	U0401	U1028	

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 205 OF 207

ABS Control Module Received Invalid Data From Hybrid/EV Powertrain Control Module Control Module U0594 U1029 Vacuum Pump Control Circuit "A"/Open Vacuum Pump C1035 P258A Vacuum Pump Control Circuit "B"/Open Vacuum Pump C1036 P258E Brake Vacuum Pump General Electrical Failure Vacuum Pump C1016 C0021 Vacuum Supply Signal Plausibility Failure Vacuum Pump C1015 C0021 Vacuum Supply Isinal Plausibility Failure Vacuum Pump C1015 C0021 Vacuum Supply Fluid Level Vacuum Pump C1015 P050F Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure Vacuum Pump C1015 P050F Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure Vacuum Pump C1015 P050F Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure Vacuum Pump C1015 P050F Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure Vacuum Pump C1015 P050F Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure Vacuum Pump C1015 P050F Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure Vacuum Pump C1015 P050F Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure Vacuum Pump C1015 P050F Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure ABS Module C0001 C0001 CCS Control Channel "A" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0002 C0002 CCS Control Channel "B" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0003 C0003 CCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0004 C0004 CO004 ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To ABS Module C0020 C052E CABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck ABS Module C0020 C052E Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Minimum Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021 Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021 Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566 Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566 Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568 Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0569 Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibra		Invalid Data Received From		
From Hybrid/EV Powertrain Control Module  Vacuum Pump Control Circuit "A"/Open  Vacuum Pump  C1035 P258A  Vacuum Pump Control Circuit "B"/Open  Vacuum Pump  C1036 P25EE  Parake Vacuum Pump General Electrical Failure  Vacuum Pump  C101C P258B  Vacuum Supply Signal Plausibility Failure  Vacuum Pump  C1015 C0021  Vacuum Supply Low Fluid Level  Vacuum Pump  C1015 P050F  Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure  Vacuum Pump  C1015 P050F  Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure  Vacuum Pump  C1015 P050F  Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure  Vacuum Pump  C1015 P050F  Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure  Vacuum Pump  C1015 P050F  CS Control Channel "A" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0001 C0001  C0001  CS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0002 C0002  CCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0003 C0003  CCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0004 C0004  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Ground  ABS Module  C0020 C052E  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery  ABS Module  C0020 C052E  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open  ABS Module  C0020 C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open  ABS Module  C0020 C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck  ABS Module  C0020 C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck  ABS Module  C0020 C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck  ABS Module  C0020 C052C  ABS Parke Booster Performance Signal Has Too  Many Transitions / Events  Vacuum Booster  C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High  Vacuum Booster  C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High  Vacuum Booster  C0022 C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High  Vacuum Booster  C0022 C0568  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044 C053D	ABS Control Module Received Invalid Data			
Vacuum Pump Control Circuit "B"/Open Vacuum Pump C1016 P25EE Brake Vacuum Pump General Electrical Failure Vacuum Pump C101C P258B Vacuum Supply Signal Plausibility Failure Vacuum Pump C1015 C0021 Vacuum Supply Low Fluid Level Vacuum Pump C1015 P050F Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure Vacuum Pump C1015 P050F TCS Control Channel "A" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0001 C0001 TCS Control Channel "A" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0002 C0002 TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0003 C0003 TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0004 C0004 TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0003 C0003 TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0004 C0004 ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short TO Ground ABS Module C0004 C0004 ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short TO Ground ABS Module C0000 C052E ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short TO ABS Module C0000 C052E ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open ABS Module C0000 C052C ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck ABS Module C0000 C052C ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck ABS Module C0000 C052C ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck ABS Module C0000 C052C Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Minimum Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021 Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021 Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566 Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566 Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance Vacuum Booster C0022 C0569 Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D	From Hybrid/EV Powertrain Control Module		U0594	U1029
Brake Vacuum Pump General Electrical Failure Vacuum Pump C1015 C0021 Vacuum Supply Signal Plausibility Failure Vacuum Pump C1015 C0021 Vacuum Supply Fluid Level Vacuum Pump C1015 P050F Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure Vacuum Pump C1015 P050F Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure Vacuum Pump C1015 P050F Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure Vacuum Pump C1015 P050F TCS Control Channel "A" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0001 C0001 TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0002 C0002 TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0003 C0003 TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0004 C0004 ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Ground ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery ABS Module C0020 C052E ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open ABS Module C0020 C052C ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open ABS Module C0020 C052C ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck ABS Module C0020 C052B Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Minimum Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021 Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021 Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566 Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568 Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568 Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance Vacuum Booster C0022 C0569 Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D		Vacuum Pump	C1035	P258A
Vacuum Supply Signal Plausibility Failure  Vacuum Pump  C1015  C0021  Vacuum Supply Low Fluid Level  Vacuum Pump  C1015  P050F  Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure  Vacuum Pump  C1015  P050F  CS Control Channel "A" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0001  C0001  C0001  TCS Control Channel "A" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0002  C0002  TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0003  C0003  C0003  TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0004  C0004  C0004  C0004  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Ground  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open  ABS Module  C0020  C052E  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck  ABS Module  C0020  C052B  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Minimum  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable  Vacuum Booster  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0569  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0569  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D	Vacuum Pump Control Circuit "B"/Open	Vacuum Pump	C1036	P25EE
Vacuum Supply Low Fluid Level         Vacuum Pump         C1015         P050F           Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure         Vacuum Pump         C1015         P050F           TCS Control Channel "A" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure         ABS Module         C0001         C0001           TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure         ABS Module         C0002         C0002           TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure         ABS Module         C0003         C0003           TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure         ABS Module         C0004         C0004           ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Ground         ABS Module         C0020         C052E           ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery         ABS Module         C0020         C052E           ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open         ABS Module         C0020         C052D           ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck         ABS Module         C0020         C052C           ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck         ABS Module         C0020         C052B           Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Minimum	Brake Vacuum Pump General Electrical Failure	Vacuum Pump	C101C	P258B
Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure  TCS Control Channel "A" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0001  C0001  C0001  TCS Control Channel "A" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0002  C0002  C0002  TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0003  C0003  TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0004  C0004  C0004  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Ground  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery  ABS Module  C0020  C052E  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open  ABS Module  C0020  C052D  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open  ABS Module  C0020  C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck  ABS Module  C0020  C052B  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Mainimum  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable  Vacuum Booster  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0568  Brake Bressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D	Vacuum Supply Signal Plausibility Failure	Vacuum Pump	C1015	C0021
TCS Control Channel "A" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0001 C0001  TCS Control Channel "A" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0002 C0002  TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0003 C0003  TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0004 C0004  TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0004 C0004  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Ground ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery ABS Module C0020 C052E  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open ABS Module C0020 C052D  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck ABS Module C0020 C052B  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Mass Module C0020 C052B  Brake Booster Performance Signal Has Too Many Transitions / Events Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0567  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0569  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D	Vacuum Supply Low Fluid Level	Vacuum Pump	C1015	P050F
Electrical Failure ABS Module C0001 C0001  TCS Control Channel "A" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0002 C0002  TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0003 C0003  TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0004 C0004  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Ground ABS Module C0020 C052E  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery ABS Module C0020 C052D  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open ABS Module C0020 C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck ABS Module C0020 C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck ABS Module C0020 C052B  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Module Module C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Performance Signal Has Too Many Transitions / Events Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Open Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0567  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance Vacuum Booster C0024 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D	Vacuum Supply Fluid Leak or Seal Failure	Vacuum Pump	C1015	P050F
TCS Control Channel "A" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0002  C0002  TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0003  C0003  TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0004  C0004  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Ground  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery  ABS Module  C0020  C052E  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open  ABS Module  C0020  C052D  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open  ABS Module  C0020  C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck  ABS Module  C0020  C052B  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Module  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low  Vacuum Booster  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0569  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D	TCS Control Channel "A" Valve 1 General			
Electrical Failure ABS Module C0002 C0002  TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0003 C0003  TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure ABS Module C0004 C0004  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Ground ABS Module C0020 C052E  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short TO Battery ABS Module C0020 C052E  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open ABS Module C0020 C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open ABS Module C0020 C052E  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Mass Module C0020 C052B  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Mass Module C0020 C052B  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D	Electrical Failure	ABS Module	C0001	C0001
TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 1 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0003  C0003  TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0004  C0004  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Ground  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery  ABS Module  C0020  C052E  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open  ABS Module  C0020  C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open  ABS Module  C0020  C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck  ABS Module  C0020  C052B  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Wacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Performance Signal Has Too Many Transitions / Events  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit/Open  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0567  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0569  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D	TCS Control Channel "A" Valve 2 General			
Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0003  C0003  TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0004  C0004  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Ground  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery  ABS Module  C0020  C052E  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery  ABS Module  C0020  C052D  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open  ABS Module  C0020  C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck  ABS Module  C0020  C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck  ABS Module  C0020  C052B  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Minimum  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable  Vacuum Booster  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit JOpen  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0568  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration  ABS Module  C0044  C053D	Electrical Failure	ABS Module	C0002	C0002
TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General Electrical Failure  ABS Module  C0004  C0004  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Ground  ABS Module  C0020  C052E  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery  ABS Module  C0020  C052D  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery  ABS Module  C0020  C052D  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open  ABS Module  C0020  C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck  ABS Module  C0020  C052B  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Minimum  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable  Vacuum Booster  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit/Open  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0567  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0568  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D	TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 1 General			
Electrical Failure ABS Module C0004 C0004  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Ground ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery ABS Module C0020 C052E  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery ABS Module C0020 C052D  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open ABS Module C0020 C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck ABS Module C0020 C052B  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Minimum Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Performance Signal Has Too Many Transitions / Events Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit/Open Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low Vacuum Booster C0022 C0567  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance Vacuum Booster C0022 C0569  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D	Electrical Failure	ABS Module	C0003	C0003
ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Ground ABS Module C0020 C052E  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery ABS Module C0020 C052D  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open ABS Module C0020 C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck ABS Module C0020 C052B  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Minimum Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Performance Signal Has Too Many Transitions / Events Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance Vacuum Booster C0022 C0569  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C053D	TCS Control Channel "B" Valve 2 General			
Ground ABS Module C0020 C052E  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery ABS Module C0020 C052D  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open ABS Module C0020 C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck ABS Module C0020 C052B  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Minimum Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Performance Signal Has Too Many Transitions / Events Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C053D		ABS Module	C0004	C0004
ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Short To Battery ABS Module C0020 C052D  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open ABS Module C0020 C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck ABS Module C0020 C052B  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < C0021 C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Performance Signal Has Too Many Transitions / Events Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit/Open Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Llow Vacuum Booster C0022 C0567  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C053D	·			
Battery ABS Module C0020 C052D  ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open ABS Module C0020 C052C  ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck ABS Module C0020 C052B  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Minimum Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Performance Signal Has Too Many Transitions / Events Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit/Open Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low Vacuum Booster C0022 C0567  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance Vacuum Booster C0022 C0569  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C053D		ABS Module	C0020	C052E
ABS Pump Motor Control Circuit Open ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck ABS Module C0020 C052B  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude <	•	ARS Module	C0020	C052D
ABS Pump Motor Control Actuator Stuck  Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Minimum  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Performance Signal Has Too  Many Transitions / Events  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded  Position Not Reachable  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit/Open  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0567  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0569  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D			1	
Brake Booster Performance Signal Amplitude < Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Performance Signal Has Too Many Transitions / Events Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit/Open Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low Vacuum Booster C0022 C0567  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance Vacuum Booster C0022 C0569  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D				
MinimumVacuum BoosterC0021C0021Brake Booster Performance Signal Has Too Many Transitions / EventsVacuum BoosterC0021C0021Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not ReachableVacuum BoosterC0021C0021Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit/OpenVacuum BoosterC0022C0566Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit LowVacuum BoosterC0022C0567Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit HighVacuum BoosterC0022C0568Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit PerformanceVacuum BoosterC0022C0569Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053DBrake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053DBrake Pressure Sensor Missing CalibrationABS ModuleC0044C053DBrake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053DBrake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053D	•	ABS Module	C0020	СОЭДЬ
Brake Booster Performance Signal Has Too Many Transitions / Events  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit/Open  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0567  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0569  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration  ABS Module  C0044  C053D		Vacuum Booster	C0021	C0021
Many Transitions / Events  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable  Vacuum Booster  C0021  C0021  C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit/Open  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0567  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance  Vacuum Booster  C0022  C0568  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration  ABS Module  C0044  C0560  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance  ABS Module  C0044  C053D		Vacadii Boostei	COOZI	C0021
Brake Booster Performance Commanded Position Not Reachable Vacuum Booster C0021 C0021  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit/Open Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low Vacuum Booster C0022 C0567  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance Vacuum Booster C0022 C0569  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D		Vacuum Booster	C0021	C0021
Position Not ReachableVacuum BoosterC0021C0021Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit/OpenVacuum BoosterC0022C0566Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit LowVacuum BoosterC0022C0567Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit HighVacuum BoosterC0022C0568Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit PerformanceVacuum BoosterC0022C0569Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053DBrake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053DBrake Pressure Sensor Missing CalibrationABS ModuleC0044C053DBrake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C0560Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053D		Vacadiii Boostei	COOLI	00021
Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit/Open Vacuum Booster C0022 C0566  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low Vacuum Booster C0022 C0567  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance Vacuum Booster C0022 C0569  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D		Vacuum Booster	C0021	C0021
Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Low Vacuum Booster C0022 C0567  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance Vacuum Booster C0022 C0569  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C0560  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D				
Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit High Vacuum Booster C0022 C0568  Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit Performance Vacuum Booster C0022 C0569  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C0560  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D	•			
Brake Booster Solenoid Circuit PerformanceVacuum BoosterC0022C0569Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053DBrake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053DBrake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053DBrake Pressure Sensor Missing CalibrationABS ModuleC0044C0560Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053D				
Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D  Brake Pressure Sensor Missing Calibration ABS Module C0044 C0560  Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D				
Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053DBrake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053DBrake Pressure Sensor Missing CalibrationABS ModuleC0044C0560Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053D				
Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053DBrake Pressure Sensor Missing CalibrationABS ModuleC0044C0560Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053D				
Brake Pressure Sensor Missing CalibrationABS ModuleC0044C0560Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/PerformanceABS ModuleC0044C053D				
Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Range/Performance ABS Module C0044 C053D				
Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Intermittent/Erratic   ABS Module   C0044   C056B	Brake Pressure Sensor "A" Intermittent/Erratic	ABS Module	C0044	C056B
Left Front Brake Pressure Sensor Signal Bias		22		
Level Out of Range / Zero Adjustment Failure ABS Module C1133 C053D		ABS Module	C1133	C053D

# **PCM On Board Diagnostic Executive**

The On-Board Diagnostic (OBD) Executive is a portion of the PCM strategy that manages the diagnostic trouble codes and operating modes for all diagnostic tests. It is the "traffic cop" of the diagnostic system. The Diagnostic Executive performs the following functions:

- Sequence the OBD monitors such that when a test runs, each input that it relies upon has already been tested. For 2008 MY and beyond ISO 14229 programs, the OBD monitors are no longer sequenced by the diagnostic executive.
- Controls and co-ordinates the execution of the individual OBD system monitors: Catalyst, Misfire, EGR, O2, Fuel, AIR, EVAP and, Comprehensive Component Monitor (CCM). For 2008 MY and beyond ISO 14229 programs, the execution of the OBD monitors is no longer controlled and coordinated by the diagnostic executive.
- Stores freeze frame and "similar condition" data.
- Manages storage and erasure of Diagnostic Trouble Codes as well as MIL illumination.
- Controls and co-ordinates the execution of the On-Demand tests: Key On Engine Off (KOEO)Key
  On Engine Running (KOER), and the Output Test Mode (OTM). For 2008 MY and beyond ISO
  14229 programs, the Output Test Mode is no longer supported by the diagnostic executive.
- Performs transitions between various states of the diagnostic and powertrain control system to minimize the effects on vehicle operation.
- Interfaces with the diagnostic test tools to provide diagnostic information (I/M readiness, various J1979 test modes) and responses to special diagnostic requests (J1979 Mode 08 and 09).
- Tracks and manages indication of the driving cycle which includes the time between two key on events that include an engine start and key off.

The diagnostic executive also controls several overall, global OBD entry conditions.

- The battery voltage must fall between 11.0 and 18.0 volts to initiate monitoring cycles.
- The engine must be started to initiate the engine started, engine running, and engine off monitoring cycles.
- The Diagnostic Executive suspends OBD monitoring when battery voltage falls below 11.0 volts.
- The Diagnostic Executive suspends monitoring of fuel-system related monitors (catalyst, misfire, evap, O2, AIR and fuel system) when fuel level falls below 15%. For 2005 MY and beyond, the execution of the fuel related OBD monitors is no longer suspended for fuel level by the diagnostic executive.

The diagnostic executive controls the setting and clearing of pending and confirmed DTCs.

- A pending DTC and freeze frame data is stored after a fault is confirmed on the first monitoring cycle. If the
  fault recurs on the next driving cycle, a confirmed DTC is stored, freeze frame data is updated, and the MIL
  is illuminated. If confirmed fault free on the next driving cycle, the pending DTC and freeze frame data is
  erased on the next power-up.
- For the 2005 MY and later, pending DTCs will be displayed as long as the fault is present. Note that OBD-II regulations required a complete fault-free monitoring cycle to occur before erasing a pending DTC. In practice, this means that a pending DTC is erased on the next power-up after a fault-free monitoring cycle.
- For clearing comprehensive component monitoring (CCM) pending DTCs, the specific monitor must determine that no fault is present, and a 2-hour engine off soak has occurred prior to starting the vehicle. The 2-hour soak criteria for clearing CCM confirmed and pending DTCs has been utilized since the 2000 MY. For 2008 MY and beyond ISO 14229 programs, the engine off soak is no longer used by the diagnostic executive.
- After a confirmed DTC is stored and the MIL has been illuminated, three consecutive confirmed fault-free
  monitoring cycles must occur before the MIL can be extinguished on the next (fourth) power-up. After 40
  engine warm-ups, the DTC and freeze frame data is erased.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 207 OF 207

The diagnostic executive controls the setting and clearing of permanent DTCs.

- A permanent DTC is stored when a confirmed DTC is stored, the MIL has been illuminated, and there are not yet six permanent DTCs stored.
- After a permanent DTC is stored, three consecutive confirmed fault-free monitoring cycles must occur before the permanent DTC can be erased.
- After a permanent DTC is stored, one confirmed fault-free monitoring cycle must occur, following a DTC reset request, before the permanent DTC can be erased. For 2010MY and beyond ISO 14229 programs a driving cycle including the following criteria must also occur, following the DTC reset request, before a permanent DTC can be erased:
  - o Cumulative time since engine start is greater than or equal to 600 seconds;
  - Cumulative vehicle operation at or above 25 miles per hour occurs for greater than or equal
    to 300 seconds (medium-duty vehicles with diesel engines certified on an engine
    dynamometer may use cumulative operation at or above 15% calculated load in lieu of at or
    above 25 miles per hour for purposes of this criteria); and
  - Continuous vehicle operation at idle (i.e., accelerator pedal released by driver and vehicle speed less than or equal to one mile per hour) for greater than or equal to 30 seconds.
- A permanent DTC cannot be erased by a KAM clear (battery disconnect). Additionally, its confirmed DTC counterpart will be restored after completion of the KAM reset (battery reconnect).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 208 OF 207

## **Exponentially Weighted Moving Average**

Exponentially Weighted Moving Averaging is a well-documented statistical data processing technique that is used to reduce the variability on an incoming stream of data. Use of EWMA does not affect the mean of the data, however, it does affect the distribution of the data. Use of EWMA serves to "filter out" data points that exhibit excessive and unusual variability and could otherwise erroneously light the MIL.

The simplified mathematical equation for EWMA implemented in software is as follows:

```
New Average = [New data point * "filter constant"] + [( 1 - "filter constant") * Old Average]
```

This equation produces an exponential response to a step-change in the input data. The "Filter Constant" determines the time constant of the response. A large filter constant (i.e. 0.90) means that 90% of the new data point is averaged in with 10% of the old average. This produces a very fast response to a step change. Conversely, a small filter constant (i.e. 0.10) means that only 10% of the new data point is averaged in with 90% of the old average. This produces a slower response to a step change.

When EWMA is applied to a monitor, the new data point is the result from the latest monitor evaluation. A new average is calculated each time the monitor is evaluated and stored in Keep Alive Memory (KAM). This normally occurs each driving cycle. The MIL is illuminated and a DTC is stored based on the New Average store in KAM.

In order to facilitate repair verification and DDV demonstration, 2 different filter constants are used. A "fast filter constant" is used after KAM is cleared or DTCs are erased and a "normal filter constant" is used for normal customer driving. The "fast filter" is used for 2 driving cycles after KAM is cleared/DTCs are erased, and then the "normal filter" is used. The "fast filter" allows for easy repair verification and monitor demonstration in 2 driving cycles, while the normal filter is used to allow up to 6 driving cycles, on average, to properly identify a malfunction and illuminate the MIL. This feature is called Fast Initial Response (FIR). The fast filter is always calibrated to 1.0 which means that the EWMA is effectively disabled because the new average is 100% of the new data point. Since the EWMA is effectively disabled, it takes twp driving cycles to set the MIL. The first driving cycle with a fault will set a pending DTC; the second driving cycle will set a confirmed code and illuminate the MIL.

The other unique feature used with EWMA is called Step Change Logic (SCL). This logic detects an abrupt change from a no-fault condition to a fault condition. This is done by comparing the new data point to the EWMA old average. If the two points differ by more than a calibrated amount (i.e. the new data point is outside the normal distribution), it means that a catastrophic failure has occurred. The fast filter is then used in the same manner as for the FIR feature above. Since the EWMA is effectively disabled, it takes twp driving cycles to set the MIL. The first driving cycle with a fault will set a pending DTC; the second driving cycle will set a confirmed code and illuminate the MIL. The SCL becomes active after the 4th "normal" monitoring cycle to give the EWMA a chance to stabilize.

During "normal" EWMA operation, a slower filter constant is used. The "normal filer" allows the MIL to be illuminated in 1 to 6 driving cycles. A confirmed code is set and the MIL is illuminated as soon as the EWMA crosses the malfunction threshold. There is no pending DTC because EWMA uses a 1-trip MIL.

In order to relate filter constants to driving cycles for MIL illumination, filter constants must be converted to time constants. The mathematical relationship is described below:

```
Time constant = [ ( 1 / filter constant ) - 1 ] * evaluation period
```

The evaluation period is a driving cycle. The time constant is the time it takes to achieve 68% of a step-change to an input. Two time constants achieve 95% of a step change input.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 209 OF 207

## **EWMA Examples**

EWMA with FIR and SCL has been incorporated in the catalyst monitor, the Rear O2 response test and the EONV Evaporative system leak check monitor. There are 3 calibrateable parameters that determine the MIL illumination characteristics.

"Fast" filter constant (0.9999), used for 2 driving cycles after DTCs are cleared/KAM is reset (FIR) and for Step Change Logic (SCL)

"Normal" filter constant (typically 0.4),, used for all subsequent, "normal" customer driving

Number of driving cycles to use fast filter after KAM clear (normally set to 2 driving cycles)

Several examples for a typical catalyst monitor calibration are shown in the tables below. The first example does not show SCL in order to better illustrate the EWMA calculation and the 1-trip MIL.

Monitor evaluation	EWMA Filter Calculation, "normal" filter constant	Weighted Average	Driving cycle	Action/Comment
("new data")	set to 0.4	("new	number	
	Malfunction threshold = .75	average")		
0.15	.15 * (0.4) + .15 * ( 1 - 0.4)	0.15		normal 120K system
1.0	1.0 * (0.4) + .15 * ( 1 - 0.4)	0.49	1	large failure occurs
1.0	1.0 * (0.4) + .49 * ( 1 - 0.4)	0.69	2	
1.0	1.0 * (0.4) + .69 * ( 1 - 0.4)	0.82	3	exceeds threshold, MIL on
1.0	1.0 * (0.4) + .82 * ( 1 - 0.4)	0.89	4	MIL on
0.8	0.8 * (0.4) + .15 * ( 1 - 0.4)	0.41	1	1.5 * threshold failure
0.8	0.8 * (0.4) + .41 * ( 1 - 0.4)	0.57	2	
0.8	0.8 * (0.4) + .57 * ( 1 - 0.4)	0.66	3	
0.8	0.8 * (0.4) + .66 * ( 1 - 0.4)	0.72	4	
0.8	0.8 * (0.4) + .72 * ( 1 - 0.4)	0.75	5	equals threshold, MIL on
0.8	0.8 * (0.4) + .75 * ( 1 - 0.4)	0.77	6	MIL on
0.8	0.8 * (0.99) + 0* ( 1 - 0.99)	0.8	1	1.5 * threshold failure after code clear, pending DTC
0.8	0.8 * (0.99) + .8 * ( 1 - 0.99)	0.8	2	MIL on (I/M Readiness set to "ready"

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 210 OF 207

# I/M Readiness Code

The readiness function is implemented based on the J1979/ISO 15031-5 format. Clearing codes using a scan tool results in the various I/M readiness bits being set to a "not-ready" condition. As each non-continuous monitor completes a full diagnostic check, the I/M readiness bit associated with that monitor is set to a "ready" condition. This may take one or two driving cycles based on whether malfunctions are detected or not. The readiness bits for comprehensive component monitoring, misfire and fuel system monitoring are considered complete once all the non-continuous monitors have been evaluated. Because the evaporative system monitor requires ambient conditions between 40 and 100 °F and BARO > 22.5 " Hg (< 8,000 ft.) to run, special logic can "bypass" the running the evap monitor for purposes of clearing the evap system I/M readiness bit due to the continued presence of these extreme conditions. The table below shows which monitors must complete for I/M readiness.

I/M Readiness bit	Bank 1	Bank 2
Catalyst monitoring	P0420	Not Supported
Heated catalyst monitoring	Not Supported	Not Supported
Evaporative system monitoring 0.040" monitor used for I/M readiness)	P04ED (0.040")	
Secondary air system monitoring	Not Supported	Not Supported
Oxygen sensor monitoring		
Upstream response test	P0133	Not Supported
Upstream lack of movement test	P2195/P2196	Not Supported
Upstream heater	P0053/P0030	Not Supported
Downstream functional test	P0136/P2270/P2271	Not Supported
Downstream heater	P0054/P00D2	Not Supported
Downstream response test	P013A/P013E	Not Supported
Post catalyst fuel trim monitor	P2096/P0297	Not Supported
Oxygen sensor heater monitoring	Same as O2 sensor above	Not Supported
EGR and/or VVT system monitoring		
Stepper Motor EGR	P0400	
DPFE EGR		
VVT supported	P0011/P0012/P0014/P0015	Not Supported
Misfire monitoring	Always ready	Not Supported
Fuel system monitoring	Fuel trim always ready	Not Supported
A/F ratio imbalance monitor	P219A	Not Supported
Comprehensive component monitoring	Always ready	Not Supported

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 211 OF 207

## Evap bypass logic:

If the evaporative system monitor conditions are met with the exception of the 40 to 100 °F ambient temperatures or BARO range, a timer is incremented. The timer value is representative of conditions where the Evap monitor could have run (all entry conditions met except IAT and BARO) but did not run due to the presence of those extreme conditions. If the timer continuously exceeds 30 seconds during a driving cycle in which all continuous and non-continuous monitors were evaluated, the evaporative system monitor is then considered complete. If the above conditions are repeated during a second driving cycle, the I/M readiness bit for the evaporative system is set to a "ready" condition.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 212 OF 207

## **In-Use Monitor Performance Ratio**

Manufacturers are required to implement software algorithms that track in-use performance for each of the following components: catalyst bank 1, catalyst bank 2, primary oxygen sensor bank 1, primary oxygen sensor bank 2, evaporative 0.020" leak detection system, EGR system, and secondary air system, and secondary oxygen sensor bank 1 and secondary oxygen sensor bank 2 for 2010 MY and beyond. The numerator for each component or system tracks the number of times that all conditions necessary for a specific monitor to detect a malfunction have been encountered. The denominator for each component or system tracks the number of times that the vehicle has been operated in the specified conditions.

If a vehicle utilizes Variable Valve Timing (VVT) in place of EGR, the VVT in-use data is reported in place of the EGR in-use data. If a vehicle utilizes both an EGR system and a VVT system, the PCM tracks the in-use performance data for both monitors, but reports only the data for the system with the lowest numerical ratio.

If a vehicle utilizes an evaporative system monitor that is certified to 0.040" or 0.150" requirements instead of 0.020" requirements, the PCM reports the 0.040" monitor or 0.150" monitor in-use performance data in place of the 0.020" in-use performance data.

The table below shows which monitors must complete to increment each IUMPR numerator.

Note that EVAP monitor takes longer to find a fault than to pass, therefore, it must use a "ghost monitor" that tracks whether the monitor could have found a fault, had a fault been present. To increment the IUMPR counter for EVAP, the 0.020" leak check must maintain monitoring conditions for 45 minutes after shutdown. The 0.040" leak check must maintain monitoring condition based on the longest time it take to pull to target vacuum. If the actual monitor fails, the ghost monitor does not run and the numerator is incremented.

Note that Catalyst monitor uses EWMA. The numerator increments after the catalyst monitor completes. After a code clear, the numerator increments after catalyst monitor completes 6 times.

## **Ignition Cycle Counter**

Ignition cycle counter will increment after engine start >= 1 s for non-hybrid vehicle

"Engine start" is defined as the point when the engine reaches a speed 150 rpm below the normal, warmedup idle speed (as determined in the drive position for vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission).

Ignition cycle counter will increment after propulsion system active for >= 1 s for hybrid vehicle

"Propulsion system active" is the state where the powertrain (e.g., engine, electric machine) is enabled by the driver (e.g., after ignition on for conventional vehicles, after power button pushed for some hybrid vehicles, after remote start activation) such that the vehicle is ready to be used (e.g., vehicle is ready to be driven, ready to be shifted from "park" to "drive", heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC) turned on to condition cabin prior to driving), when such an HVAC operating mode could eventually cause a fueled start of the engine). For purposes of this definition, "the state where the powertrain is enabled" does not include activations that are not driver-initiated (e.g., conditions where portions of the vehicle system wake up to perform OBD II monitoring or off-board charging).

## **General Denominator Counter**

General Denominator counter will increment if all the following conditions are met:

- Ambient Temperature >= -7 deg C (20 deg F)
- Barometric pressure >= 752 hPA (8,000 ft altitude)
- Time since engine start (or propulsion system active for hybrid) => 600 s
- Time with vehicle speed greater or equal to than 40 kph (25 mph) >= 300 s

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 213 OF 207

- Continuous vehicle operation at idle time (i.e., accelerator pedal released with vehicle speed <= 1.6 kph (1 mph)) >= 30 s
- For hybrid vehicles, cumulative fueled engine operation >= 10 s

## Special requirements for Denominator for VVT Monitor

VVT Monitor requires all the conditions for the general denominator to increment and VVT system commanded on for a continuous time >= 10 s

#### Conditions for interrupting Numerators are described in the individual monitor descriptions.

#### Conditions for interrupting monitor specific Denominators are as ,follows:

Catalyst Monitor - In addition to faults that disable the general denominator faults on any of the following sensors or actuators:

- Oxygen sensors
- MAP/MAF sensors
- Air temperature sensors
- Canister purge solenoid
- Fuel rail pressure sensor
- Fuel volume regulator
- Crank position sensor
- Fuel injectors
- Ignition coils
- Knock sensors
- Engine coolant temperature sensors
- Fuel monitor control errors
- Torque control errors
- VVT errors"

Oxygen Sensor Monitor - In addition to faults that disable the general denominator faults on any of the following sensors or actuators:

- MAP/MAF sensors
- Air temperature sensors
- Canister purge solenoid
- Fuel rail pressure sensor
- Fuel volume regulator
- Crank position sensor
- Cam position sensors
- Fuel injectors
- Ignition coils
- Knock sensors
- Engine coolant temperature sensors
- Lambda control errors
- Torque control errors
- Throttle position sensor
- VVT errors
- Vehicle speed errors"

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 214 OF 207

VVT Monitor - In addition to faults that disable the general denominator faults on any of the following sensors or actuators

- Crank position sensor
- Cam position sensors
- VVT Solenoids
- ECT Sensor
- Throttle position sensor
- MAP/MAF sensor"

Conditions for interrupting General Denominators are as follows; faults on any of the following sensors and actuators:

- Throttle position sensors
- Crank position sensor
- Vehicle speed sensor
- MAP/MAF sensor
- Intake air temperature sensor
- Engine coolant temperature sensor"

IUMPR Counter Numerator	Controlling Monitor
Catalyst Monitoring Bank 1	P0420
Catalyst Monitoring Bank 2 (if supported)	
O2 Sensor Monitoring Bank 1	P0133
O2 Sensor Monitoring Bank 2 (if supported)	
EGR and/or VVT System Monitoring	
EGR (if supported)	P0400/P0401
VVT (if supported)	P0011/P0012/P0014/P0015
EVAP Monitoring	
0.020" monitoring (California)	P04EE/P04EF
0.040" monitoring (Federal)	P0442
0.150" monitoring (HD OBD)	P0455
AIR Monitoring (not supported)	
Secondary O2 Sensor Monitoring Bank 1	P013A/P013E
Secondary O2 Sensor Monitoring Bank 2 (if supported)	

FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 215 OF 207

The data is output using Service \$09, InfoType \$08. An example for the data format is show below. The monitoring ratio is the monitor numerator divided by the monitor denominator.

Test Equipment Display	Data	Monitoring Ratio	
OBDCOND – number of times OBD monitoring conditions encountered (General Denominator)	15 counts		
IGNCNTR - number of times that the engine has been started	27 counts		
CATCOMP1 - times that all conditions necessary to detect a catalyst system bank 1 malfunction have been encountered (numerator)	14 counts	0.93	
CATCOND1 - times that the vehicle has been operated in the specified catalyst monitoring conditions (denominator)	15 counts		
CATCOMP2 - times that all conditions necessary to detect a catalyst system bank 2 malfunction have been encountered (numerator)	0 counts N/A		
CATCOND2 - times that the vehicle has been operated in the specified catalyst monitoring conditions (denominator)	0 counts		
O2SCOMP1 - times that all conditions necessary to detect an oxygen sensor bank 1 malfunction have been encountered (numerator)	19 counts	1.27	
O2SCOND1 - times that the vehicle has been operated in the specified oxygen sensor monitoring conditions (denominator)	15 counts	1	
O2SCOMP2 - times that all conditions necessary to detect an oxygen sensor bank 2 malfunction have been encountered (numerator)	0 counts	N/A	
O2SCOND2 - times that the vehicle has been operated in the specified oxygen sensor monitoring conditions (denominator)	0 counts		
EGRCOND - times that all conditions necessary to detect an EGR/VVT system malfunction have been encountered (numerator)	19 counts	1.27	
EGRCOMP - times that the vehicle has been operated in the specified EGR/VVT system monitoring conditions (denominator)	15 counts		
AIRCOND - times that all conditions necessary to detect an AIR system malfunction have been encountered (numerator).	0 counts	N/A	
AIRCOMP - number of times that the vehicle has been operated in the specified AIR system monitoring conditions (denominator).	0 counts		
EVAPCOMP - of times that all conditions necessary to detect a 0.020" (or 0.040") EVAP system leak malfunction have been encountered (numerator)	16 counts	1.33	
EVAPCOND - times that the vehicle has been operated in the specified EVAP system leak malfunction monitoring conditions (denominator)	12 counts		
SO2SCOMP1 - times that all conditions necessary to detect a secondary oxygen sensor bank 1 malfunction have been encountered (numerator)	17 counts 1.13		
SO2SCOND1 - times that the vehicle has been operated in the specified secondary oxygen sensor monitoring conditions (denominator)	15 counts		
SO2SCOMP2 - times that all conditions necessary to detect a secondary oxygen sensor bank 2 malfunction have been encountered (numerator)	0 counts N/A		
SO2SCOND2 - times that the vehicle has been operated in the specified secondary oxygen sensor monitoring conditions (denominator)	0 counts		

## **Catalyst Temperature Model**

A catalyst temperature model is currently used for entry into the catalyst and oxygen sensor monitors. The catalyst temperature model uses various PCM parameters to infer exhaust/catalyst temperature. For the 1998 MY, the catalyst temperature model has been enhanced and incorporated into the Type A misfire monitoring logic. The model has been enhanced to include a misfire-induced exotherm prediction. This allows the model to predict catalyst temperature in the presence of misfire.

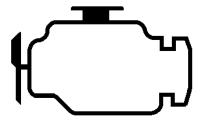
The catalyst damage misfire logic (Type A) for MIL illumination has been modified to require that both the catalyst damage misfire rate and the catalyst damage temperature is being exceeded prior to MIL illumination. This change is intended to prevent the detection of unserviceable, unrepeatable, burst misfire during cold engine start-up while ensuring that the MIL is properly illuminated for misfires that truly damage the catalyst.

Beginning with the 2007 MY, the catalyst temperature model is also used to generate the primary inputs to the CSER Monitor as described in that section of this document.

## **Serial Data Link MIL Illumination**

The instrument cluster on some vehicles uses the CAN data link to receive and display various types of information from the PCM. For example, the engine coolant temperature information displayed on the instrument cluster comes from the same ECT sensor used by the PCM for all its internal calculations.

These same vehicles use the CAN data link to illuminate the MIL rather than a circuit, hard-wired to the PCM. The PCM periodically sends the instrument cluster a message that tells it to turn on the MIL, turn off the MIL or blink the MIL. If the instrument cluster fails to receive a message within a 5-second timeout period, the instrument cluster itself illuminates the MIL. If communication is restored, the instrument cluster turns off the MIL after 5 seconds. Due to its limited capabilities, the instrument cluster does not generate or store Diagnostic Trouble Codes.



FORD MOTOR COMPANY REVISION DATE: MAY 12, 2017 PAGE 217 OF 207

# **Calculated Load Value**

LOAD PCT (PID \$04) =

#### current airflow

(peak airflow at WOT@STP as a function of rpm) \* (BARO/29.92) \* SQRT(298/(AAT+273))

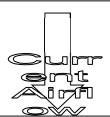
Where: STP = Standard Temperature and Pressure = 25 °C, 29.92 in Hg BARO,

SQRT = square root,

WOT = wide open throttle,

AAT = Ambient Air Temperature and is in °C





#### current airflow

(peak airflow at WOT@STP as a function of rpm) \* (BARO/29.92) \* SQRT(298/(AAT+273))

